

BELLE2-REPORT-2023-001 DRAFT Version 2.0 December 12, 2023

5 The Belle II Detector Upgrades Conceptual Design Report

Belle II Collaboration

Executive Summary

The SuperKEKB accelerator and the Belle II detector started operation in 2019 with a steady increase in luminosity, reaching a peak instantaneous luminosity of $\mathcal{L}_\mathrm{peak} = 4.65 \times 10^{34} \, \mathrm{cm}^{-2} \mathrm{s}^{-1}$ in June 2022 and collecting an integrated luminosity 5 of 424 fb⁻¹. It has become clear that reaching the target peak luminosity of $6 \times 10^{34} \,\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \mathrm{s}^{-1}$ and the integrated luminosity $50 \,\mathrm{ab}^{-1}$ will require an upgrade of the accelerator complex, including potentially a redesign of the interaction region (IR).

A new IR would require a replacement of the vertex detector, and would im-¹⁰ ply the need for a long shutdown (named LS2, since LS1 extended from 6/2022 to 12/2023), providing also a window of opportunity for the installation of improvements in many detector subsystems. The timescale for LS2 is placed after 2027–2028 but not well defined yet, as it depends on the precise definition of the accelerator upgrade plans. It should become clearer after the restart of the ¹⁵ operation in 2024 and the full evaluation of the LS1 improvements. It should be added that the extrapolation of backgrounds to full luminosity is affected by

- large uncertainties which may erode the Belle II safety margins and reduce the overall operational efficiency.
- The Belle II upgrade program is therefore motivated by the desire to improve ²⁰ the overall physics performance of the experiment by: (i) improving the robustness against backgrounds and the radiation resistance, providing larger safety factors to run at high luminosity; (ii) developing the technology to cope with different future paths, improving the detector performance, and also providing a safety net in case anything goes wrong with the current detector.

²⁵ This Conceptual Design Report (CDR) presents a number of possible detector improvements that can be implemented in the short or medium term, along with other ideas for longer term upgrades, that go beyond the currently planned program. The various upgrades are largely independent of each other and can be selected individually on the basis of actual need, physics performance, technical

- ³⁰ readiness, and funding availability. In this sense they do not form a single coherent picture of the future Belle II, but rather a menu of possibilities. A different kind of opportunity is explored by the beam polarization option, which requires a SuperKEKB upgrade but no detector modification, opening a new and unique program of precision physics. Only a brief summary is presented in this CDR.
- ³⁵ The various options are the result of an internal selection process over the course of the past 2-3 years and are clearly at different levels of readiness. The next step will be the preparation of Technical Design Reports for those options that are worth pursuing, possibly on different timescales.

Contents

Chapter 1

Introduction

Editor: *F.Forti*

1.1 Belle II: status and perspective

⁵ The first generation asymmetric B-Factories experiments, BaBar at PEP-II and Belle at KEKB, discovered large CP violating effects in the B meson sector and provided experimental verification of the Cabibbo-Kobayashi-Maskawa mechanism for quark mixing and CP-violating phase in the Standard Model, along with a wealth of other measurements [\[1\]](#page-157-0).

¹⁰ The SuperKEKB accelerator [\[2\]](#page-157-1) and the Belle II detector [\[3,](#page-157-2) [4\]](#page-157-3), shown in figure [1.1,](#page-8-0) are a major upgrade of the Belle/KEKB complex. The nomenclature of the Belle II subdetectors is the following: Pixel Detector (PXD), Silicon Vertex Detector (SVD), forming together the VerteX Detector (VXD), Central Drift Chamber (CDC), Time of Propagation Counter (TOP), Aerogel Ring Imaging

¹⁵ Cherenkov Counter (ARICH), Electromagnetic Calorimeter (ECL), K-Long Muon System (KLM), Trigger and Data acquisition (TRG/DAQ), and High Level Trigger (HLT). A summary of the subdetector technology is presented in table [1.1](#page-7-0) [\[5,](#page-157-4) [4\]](#page-157-3) SuperKEKB and Belle II were initially commissioned with colliding beams in 2018 without the Vertex Detector VXD (Phase 2 operation). After establishing

²⁰ that the level of machine background was acceptable, at the end of 2018 the VXD was installed, but only with 2 out of 12 ladders in the PXD second layer, because of delays in the construction of the ladders.

In spring 2019 accelerator and detector operation started in earnest (Phase 3 operation), leading SuperKEKB to surpass the highest recorded instantaneous ²⁵ luminosities of the previoius B factories and of the LHC, obtaining a peak instantaneous luminosity of $\mathcal{L}_{\text{peak}} = 4.65 \times 10^{34} \,\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ in June 2022.

In summer 2022 the accelerator and detector operations were suspended for the Long Shutdown 1 (LS1), used to perform a large number of technical improvements, both on the accelerator side and the detector side, including the ³⁰ installation of a complete PXD detector. As shown in figure [1.2,](#page-8-1) in the first run period 2019–2022 a total integrated luminosity of 427 fb^{-1} was collected, of which 424 fb^{-1} in good runs, allowing the publication of numerous measure-

ments [\[6\]](#page-157-5). Belle II is an international collaboration of 1000 members at more

Table 1.1: Summary of the detector components[4]. Table 1.1: Summary of the detector components[\[4\]](#page-157-3).

Figure 1.1: Belle II detector top view.

Figure 1.2: Belle II integrated luminosity in the first run period 2019 - 2022.

Figure 1.3: Projected luminosity for SuperKEKB.

than 100 institutions in 28 countries/regions.

The current program foresees the accumulation of an integrated luminosity of $\mathcal{L}_{\text{int}} = 50 \,\mathrm{ab}^{-1}$ by the first years of the next decade.

SuperKEKB is expected to be able to reach $\mathcal{L}_{\text{peak}}$ of $2 \times 10^{35} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ with the ⁵ existing accelerator complex. However, in order to reach the target luminosity of $6\times10^{35}\,\rm cm^{-2}s^{-1}$, an upgrade of the interaction region and the QCS superconducting final focus will be required, as discussed in section [2.](#page-13-0) This implies a second Long Shutdown (LS2) in a time frame after 2027–2028 that will be used for the accelerator and detector upgrades. A notional projection of the integrated ¹⁰ luminosity for the coming years is shown in figure [1.3.](#page-9-1) An International Task Force has been setup to provide advice to SuperKEKB on the possible technical solutions [\[7\]](#page-157-6).

The LS2 and the possibility of the SuperKEKB interaction region redesign provide both a window of opportunity for the installation of detector improvements

- ¹⁵ in many subsystems, and the requirement for a vertex detector replacement, since even small changes in the interaction region would make it impossible to reuse the current VXD. Even without an interaction region redesign, upgrading the VXD would provide better physics performance as well as creating a safety net in case the current detector gets damaged.
- ²⁰ In section [1.2](#page-9-0) the detector upgrade options are briefly summarized, while the rest of the document provides a detailed description of the proposed upgrades and their status of development. It should be recognized that at this time significant R&D is still required to arrive at a final design, and that there are still large uncertainties on the time frame and exact path of the upgrade project.
- ²⁵ The detailed design of the detector upgrade will be prepared and documented in a future Technical Design Reports, to be prepared once the plans for the SuperKEKB upgrade are clarified.

1.2 Belle II upgrades overview

Soon after the construction of the Belle II detector was completed (at the end of 2018) an Upgrade Working Group (UWG) was established by the collaboration, with the charge of examining the limits of the current detector and develop ⁵ upgrade possibilities. Both short and long term options were to be considered, in order to ensure successful completion of the existing physics program, and longer term options to cope with possible higher luminosity upgrades.

As Belle II started full operation in 2019, it became clear, not surprisingly, that machine background plays an important role in the safety, efficiency, and ¹⁰ performance of data taking. SuperKEKB is a new and challenging accelerator with a relatively narrow operating margin between high luminosity and high backgrounds. It was realized that reaching the design $8\!\times\!10^{35}\,\mathrm{cm^{-2}s^{-1}}$ luminosity was probably too ambitious and an intermediate target of $6\times10^{35}\,\rm cm^{-2}s^{-1}$ was set, that in any case required some machine improvement program with the 15 possibility of an interaction region redesign.

In summer 2020 a MEXT roadmap 2020 was defined in order to reach the luminosity target of $50\,{\rm ab}^{-1}$, calling for two long shutdowns in the lifetime of the experiment: LS1 in 2022 for the replacement of PXD, and LS2 in 2026 or later for the upgrade of the machine elements and the interaction region. LS2 ²⁰ provides a window of opportunity for a significant detector upgrade, possibly improving robustness against machine backgrounds and physics performance.

The UWG has requested the submission of Expression of Interests from the various detector groups documenting upgrade ideas, mainly focused on the LS2 time scale, but also considering longer time scales and future ugprade paths.

²⁵ These internal EOIs were collected in February 2021 and reviewed by an internal Upgrade Advisory Committee formed at the end of 2020 to provide recommendations on the upgrade process. As a result of this internal review the initial EOIs were adjusted and somewhat reduced in scope, resulting in the submission of a Belle II Upgrades White Paper to the Snowmass process [\[8\]](#page-157-7).

³⁰ Belle II is designed to operate efficiently even with the background levels expected at design luminosity, but safety margins are not large. It should be noted that the extrapolation of the level of backgrounds to full luminosity is affected by large uncertainties due to many elements, such as: limited accuracy of the present parameterization; lack of modeling for the injection background; lack of

³⁵ a specific design for the interaction region upgrade. The expected evolution of these backgrounds with luminosity is described in [\[9\]](#page-157-8) and [\[10\]](#page-157-9).

The upgrade program is therefore motivated by a number of considerations:

- Improve detector robustness against backgrounds
- Provide larger safety factors for running at higher luminosity
- ⁴⁰ Increase longer term subdetector radiation resistance
	- Develop the technology to cope with different future paths, for instance if a major interaction region (IR) redesign is required to reach the target luminosity
	- Improve overall physics performance
- ⁴⁵ The upgrade activities can be classified over three different time scales:
- 1. **short term**: Long Shutdown 1 (LS1) was started in July 2022, and concluded at the end of 2023, with the main purpose of installing a complete pixel detector (PXD2). Many other minimal improvements on other subsystems were also implemented.
- ⁵ 2. **medium term**: Long Shutdown 2 (LS2), in a time frame after 2027–2028, will probably be needed for the upgrade of the interaction region to reach $\mathcal{L}_{\text{peak}} = 6 \times 10^{35} \,\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$. A new vertex detector might be required to accommodate the new IR design, and other sub-detector upgrades are possible, with various options being evaluated.
- ¹⁰ 3. **long term**: Studies have started to explore upgrades beyond the currently planned program, such as beam polarization and ultra-high luminosity, possibly $\mathcal{L}_{\rm peak}$ in excess of $1 \times 10^{36}\,{\rm cm}^{-2} {\rm s}^{-1}$. While the beam polarization has a concrete proposal, for ultra-high luminosity studies have just started.

LS1 is nearing completion at the time of writing, with a number of activities ¹⁵ being carried out:

- **VXD**: Re-installation and re-installation of the VXD, with the complete PXD2 detector.
- **CDC**: Improvement in gas circulation, monitoring and modification of the high voltage resistor chain.
- ²⁰ **TOP**: MCP-PMT replacement with ALD life extended PMTs
	- **ECL**: Improvement in pedestal correction. Gain adjustment in the shaper **DSP**
	- **KLM**: Efficiency recovery of some damaged chambers. Reinforcement of monitoring system
- ²⁵ **TRG**: Optimization of trigger veto.
	- **DAQ**: New readout board PCIe40 long-term stability test with realistic high-occupancy data.
	- **MDI**: Installation of additional loss monitors and speed-up of abort signal. Additional neutron shields.
- 30 Table [1.2](#page-12-0) shows the current ideas for the medium and long term Belle II detector upgrade ideas, that evolved from the Snowmass White paper, reducing the number of options and focusing on a concrete path as much as possible.

In the following sections a more detailed description of the various options is provided. Some approximate cost estimates are also indicated. The simulations

³⁵ reported in the text, if not specified otherwise, have used the Belle II Analysis Software Framework basf2 [\[11\]](#page-157-10).

Chapter 2

SuperKEKB

2.1 SuperKEKB status

Editor: *Y. Ohnishi, M. Masuzawa*

- ⁵ SuperKEKB is an energy asymmetry electron-positron collider aiming for a peak luminosity of $6 \times 10^{35} \,\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$, the highest luminosity ever achieved by a collider, and an integral luminosity of $50\,\mathrm{ab}^{-1}$. The adoption of a collision method based on the nano-beam scheme[\[12\]](#page-157-11) is expected to open up unexplored areas of luminosity. In the nano-beam scheme, a sufficiently thin bunch collides
- ¹⁰ with a large horizontal crossing angle. The length of the region where bunches overlap in the direction of travel ($\sigma_{z,eff}$) can be sufficiently shortened compared to the bunch length, as schematically shown in [2.1](#page-14-0) .This makes it possible to reduce the vertical beta function at the interaction point (IP), β_y^* , to a value as small as $\sigma_{z,eff}$ and luminosity increase is expected. In SuperKEKB, β_y^* is squeezed
- ¹⁵ down to about 0.3 mm, equivalent to about 1/20 of that of KEKB, to achieve the target luminosity.

The SuperKEKB collider complex consists of a 7-GeV electron ring (the highenergy ring, HER), a 4-GeV positron ring (the low-energy ring, LER), and an injector linear accelerator (LINAC) with a 1.1-GeV positron damping ring (DR),

²⁰ as shown in [2.2.](#page-14-1) The extremely high luminosity of SuperKEKB required significant upgrades to the HER, LER, and final-focus system of KEKB. The injector linac also required significant upgrades for injection beams with high current and low emittance. A new RF-gun was developed in installed, and a new DR was designed and constructed for realizing low-emittance electron and positron 25 injection to the SuperKEKB Main Ring (MR).

Phase 1 commissioning was carried out in 2016 without beam collisions. After that, the interaction region (IR) was completed by installing the final focusing superconducting quadrupole magnet system and the Belle II detector (without VXD), and the Phase 2 commissioning started in March 2018 and a series of col-

³⁰ lision tuning was performed. Phase 3 commissioning started in March 2019 with the fully instrumented Belle II detector. The first hadron event was observed by Belle II on April 26 of the same year. A summary of the operation since 2019 is shown in Fig. [2.3.](#page-15-0)

Figur[e2.4](#page-16-0) shows the evolution of β_y^* together with reference to values at other

Figure 2.1: Schematic view of the nanobeam collision scheme.

Figure 2.2: Schematic view of SuperKEKB Main Ring. The electron and positron rings have four straight sections named Tsukuba, Oho, Fuji, and Nikko. The electron and positron beams collide at the interaction point in the Tsukuba straight section.

Figure 2.3: Operation history from 2019 to 2022: beam current in the HER, LER, and luminosity in a day.

accelerators. By carefully looking at the relationship between the injection efficiency and the background to the detector and adjusting the collimator opening, we were able to perform the first collision experiment at 1 mm during the 2019 run. A test of squeezing β_y^* down to $0.8\,\text{mm}$ was carried out for short times ⁵ approximately one week in 2020 and 2022.

The crab waist (CW) scheme[\[12,](#page-157-11) [13\]](#page-158-0) was adopted for the both rings since the 2020 spring run. The CW ratio, which is a number indicating what percentage of the magnetic field is applied to the required sextupole magnet, is 80% in the LER and 40% in the HER, respectively at this point.

10 A peak luminosity of 4.65×10^{34} $\rm cm^{-2} \, s^{-1}$ was achieved with $\beta_y^* = 1 \, \rm mm$ in the physics run, and $4.71 \times 10^{34} \,\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$ is the highest luminosity obtained without data acquisition by the Belle II detector up to now. And this peak luminosity is a world record in collider history.

The machine parameters that accomplished the peak luminosity are pre-¹⁵ sented in Table [2.1](#page-17-1) together with $\beta_y^* = 0.8 \text{ mm}$. The luminosity formula in the nano-beam scheme is expressed as

$$
L = \frac{N_{+}N_{-}n_{b}f_{0}}{2\pi\phi_{x}\Sigma_{z}\Sigma_{y}^{*}},
$$
\n(2.1)

where \pm indicates positrons (+) or electrons (-), N is the number of particles in a bunch, n_b is the number of bunches, f_0 is the revolution frequency, and ϕ_x is

Figure 2.4: History of β_y^*

the half crossing angle. Σ_z and Σ_y^* are defined by

$$
\Sigma_z = \sqrt{\sigma_{z+}^2 + \sigma_{z-}^2} \qquad \Sigma_y^* = \sqrt{\sigma_{y+}^{*2} + \sigma_{y-}^{*2}}.
$$
 (2.2)

In the case of the nano-beam scheme, a geometrical luminosity loss due to an hourglass effect[\[14\]](#page-158-1) is sufficiently small, even if the beta function at the IP is squeezed down to the bunch length divided by the Piwinski angle, and is omitted ⁵ here. The vertical beam–beam parameter is expressed by

$$
\xi_{y\pm} \simeq \frac{r_e N_{\mp}}{2\pi \gamma_{\pm}} \frac{1}{\phi_x \sigma_z} \sqrt{\frac{\beta_y^*}{\varepsilon_y}},\tag{2.3}
$$

where γ is the Lorentz factor, and ε_y is the vertical emittance. Here, the beam spot-size at the IP between the LER and HER is assumed to be equal. Alternatively, the vertical beam–beam parameter is expressed using Eq. [\(2.1\)](#page-15-1) and Eq. [\(2.3\)](#page-16-1) as

$$
\xi_{y\pm} = 2er_e \frac{L\beta_y^*}{\gamma_{\pm}I_{\pm}}.\tag{2.4}
$$

¹⁰ Therefore luminosity is proportional to $\xi_{y\pm}$ and I_{\pm} and inversely proportional to β_y^* , as is shown by Eq. [\(2.5\)](#page-16-2).

$$
L \propto \frac{I_{\pm} \xi_{y\pm}}{\beta_y^*} \tag{2.5}
$$

As the beam-beam parameter increases, the collision probability increases, but so does the instability. How high this value can be raised is the key to increasing luminosity.

	June 8, 2022		May 22, 2022		
Parameters	LER	HER	LER	HER	
I(A)	1.321	1.099	0.744	0.600	
n_{h}	2249		1565		
I_b (mA)	0.587	0.489	0.475	0.383	
β_x^* (mm)	80	60	80	60	
β_y^* (mm)	1.0		0.8		
ξ_y		4.07×10^{-2} 2.79×10^{-2} 3.09×10^{-2} 2.19×10^{-2}			
ε_y (pm)	31.7		29.6		
Σ_u^* (μ m)	0.252		0.218		
σ_z (mm)	5.69	6.02	5.40	5.78	
CW ratio $(\%)$	80	40	80	40	
L $\rm (cm^{-2}\,s^{-1})$	4.65×10^{34}		2.49×10^{34}		

Table 2.1: Machine Parameters achieved at SuperKEKB

Figure [2.5](#page-18-0) shows the vertical beam–beam parameter defined by Eq. [\(2.4\)](#page-16-3) for $\beta_y^* = 1\,\mathrm{mm}$. When the ratio of beam currents in the LER to that of the HER is 7 to 4, it becomes the energy transparent condition, $\gamma_+ I_+ = \gamma_- I_-$. However, the ratio of bunch current in the LER to that of the HER is 5 to 4 in the physics run, which ⁵ is the optimized value based on the operational experiences. The maximum beam–beam parameter of 0.0565 (LER)/0.0434 (HER) at the bunch current of 1.1 mA in the LER was achieved by the ratio of 4 to 3 in the machine study called high bunch current study (HBC). The specific luminosity is defined as the total luminosity divided by the number of bunches and by the bunch current product ¹⁰ as Eq. [\(2.6\)](#page-17-2).

$$
L_{sp} = \frac{L}{I_{b+}I_{b-}n_b} \propto \frac{1}{\Sigma_z \Sigma_y^*},\tag{2.6}
$$

where I_b is the bunch current.

Figure [2.6](#page-19-1) shows the specific luminosity achieved during the 2022 physics run. The specific luminosity decreased as the bunch current product increased, which implies that the beam–beam blowup was observed[\[15\]](#page-158-2). The comparison ¹⁵ between the CW and no CW for $\beta_y^* = 1 \text{ mm}$ is also shown in the figure. The specific luminosity was improved by utilizing the CW scheme[\[16\]](#page-158-3).

The specific luminosity with $\beta_y^* = 0.8 \,\text{mm}$ was higher than that of 1 mm by 12% at 0.18 mA^2 . The specific luminosity is more than 20% at a lower bunch current product of less than 0.1 mA^2 . The reason that the specific luminosity 20 decreases quickly can be the chromatic X–Y couplings at the IP for $\beta_y^* = 0.8 \,\text{mm}$.

In the case of $\beta_y^* = 1 \,\text{mm}$, two of the chromatic X–Y couplings $(\partial r_1^* / \partial \delta)$ and $\partial r_2^*/\partial \delta)$ in the LER are corrected by utilizing 24 rotating sextupole magnets[\[17\]](#page-158-4). The sextupole magnet is mounted on a rotating table to induce a skew sextupole field. Prior to the correction of chromatic X–Y couplings, the machine error at the

²⁵ IP is locally corrected using IP tuning knobs such as X–Y couplings (r_1, r_2, r_3, r_4) and vertical dispersions (η_y^*, η_{py}^*) so as to maximize luminosity.

Figure 2.5: Beam–beam parameters as a function of the bunch current. The positrons in the LER are indicated by red, whereas blue is used for the electrons in the HER. The cross plots are data from the HBC.

2.1.1 Impedance

The collimators are important to reduce beam related backgrounds at SuperKEKB. Movable collimators for the horizontal and vertical plane are installed in the LER and HER, respectively as shown in Fig. [2.7\[](#page-20-2)[18\]](#page-158-5).

- ⁵ A kick factor from each collimator becomes large because the vertical half aperture of the collimator is very small, typically of approximately 1-2 mm. Therefore, transverse mode coupling instability (TMCI) might become serious. The TMCI, also called strong head-tail instability, was first observed at PETRA[\[19\]](#page-158-6). For a large collider with a small chamber height and collimator aperture, the
- ¹⁰ TMCI limits the performance. At SuperKEKB, we observed a vertical beam blowup at the bunch current of approximately 0.8 mA, which is much smaller than the TMCI threshold I_{th} expressed as Eq. [\(2.7\)](#page-18-1)[\[18\]](#page-158-5).

$$
I_{\text{th}} = \frac{Cf_s E}{\sum_i \beta_{y,i} k_{y,i}(\sigma_z)}.
$$
\n(2.7)

Here, C, f_s , E, $\beta_{y,i}$, $k_{y,i}$, and σ_z are constant, the synchrotron frequency, beam energy, vertical beta function at a component i , vertical kick factor at a 15 component i , and longitudinal bunch length, respectively. The expected TMCI

Figure 2.6: Specific luminosity for $\beta_y^* = 0.8 \,\text{mm}$ and $1 \,\text{mm}$. Comparison between the CW and no CW for $\beta_y^* = 1 \,\text{mm}$.

threshold from is about 2 mA , while the observed value is 0.8 mA . We call this phenomena "-1 mode instability" because the coherent-mode frequency corresponding to $\nu_y - \nu_s$ appears when the beam blowup occurs. Recently, it was found that a tuning of the vertical bunch-by-bunch feedback system [\[20\]](#page-158-7) affects ⁵ the -1 mode instability with a interplay of the vertical short-range wake field due to the collimators. Optimization of the bunch-by-bunch feedback system is necessary to suppress the -1 mode instability.

2.1.2 Sudden beam loss

- A fast and large beam loss has been observed frequently when the bunch current $_{10}$ increases over 0.7mA [\[21\]](#page-158-8). We call this fast beam loss "sudden beam loss (SBL)." The SBL occurs in the both rings, but it is more serious in the LER. More than half of the beam current was lost within a few turns (20-30 μ s). When a SBL occurs, the vertical collimators become damaged and sometimes QCS quenches occur.
- ¹⁵ The mechanism of SBL is not understood yet. The highest and earliest beam losses during the SBL event are usually detected near the narrowest vertical collimators in the LER (e.g., D06V1, see Fig[.2.7\)](#page-20-2). A hypothesis of "fireball" has been proposed to explain the SBL, which is based on a RF cavity breakdown mechanism[\[22\]](#page-158-9). In the fireball, isolated micro particles with higher sublimation point
- ²⁰ such as tungsten and tantalum become fireballs heated by the beam-induced field. The fireball touches a material surface with lower sublimation point, and then plasma is generated around the fireball. The plasma grows and might lead

Figure 2.7: Collimator Map in 2022.

to significant interactions with the beam. We will apply the copper-coated collimator head to mitigate the fireball in the next operation.

2.1.3 Dynamic aperture and Touschek lifetime

- The dynamic aperture (DA), the stable region in phase space for a beam that can ⁵ orbit stably, is estimated by a particle tracking simulation code such as SAD[\[23\]](#page-158-10) with comparison of the measured beam lifetime. The measured lifetime was 8 minutes for $I_{b+} = 0.62 \text{ mA}$ with $\varepsilon_y = 40 \text{ pm}$ in the LER and 23 mininutes for $I_{b-} = 0.5 \text{ mA}$ with $\varepsilon_y = 35 \text{ pm}$ in the HER. The simulation can almost reproduce the Touschek lifetime in the LER; however, the DA in the operation is by a factor ¹⁰ of 2 smaller than that of the simulation in the HER. This implies that larger ma-
- chine error should be considered in the HER. As smaller DA will become serious as it squeezes β_y^* and increases the bunch current, and for beam injections[\[24\]](#page-158-11).

2.2 SuperKEKB evolution and upgrade path

The SuperKEKB physics run began in March 2019, with a fully instrumented ¹⁵ Belle II detector. The crab waist scheme, which was not included in the original SuperKEKB design plan, was implemented in April 2020 to enhance beam performance. In 2020, SuperKEKB surpassed the luminosity record of $2.11 \times$

Figure 2.8: Specific luminosity plotted against the product of beam currents after LS1.

10³⁴ cm⁻² s⁻¹ achieved by its predecessor, KEKB, with vertical and horizontal beta functions at the IP set at 1 mm and 80 mm (LER)/60 mm (HER), respectively. Thanks to the nano-beam scheme, the peak luminosity record was surpassed with smaller beam currents than those used at KEKB. In June 2022, SuperKEKB $_5$ achieved a new world record for a peak luminosity of $4.7 \times 10^{34}\,\rm cm^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ with a β_y^* of 1 mm at the collision point.

Parameters	LER	HER	LER	HER	
I(A)	2.08	1.48	2.75	2.20	
n_b	2345		2345		
I_b (mA)	0.89	0.63	1.17	0.938	
	0.8		0.6		
β_y^* (mm) ξ_y		4.44×10^{-2} 3.56×10^{-2} 6.04×10^{-2} 4.31×10^{-2}			
ε_y (pm)	30		21		
\sum_{y}^{*} (μ m)	2.18×10^{-1}		1.60×10^{-1}		
σ_z (mm)	6.49	6.35	7.23	7.05	
L $\rm (cm^{-2}\,s^{-1})$	1×10^{35}		2.4×10^{35}		

Table 2.2: Machine Parameters in the Two-stage Improvement

The operation of SuperKEKB was halted for one year and a half since the summer of 2022 to upgrade the Belle II detector and machine. Installation of a Nonlinear collimation (NLC) scheme is one among many other accelerator up-¹⁰ grades during LS1. The NLC is installed in the OHO section of the LER. A pair of

skew sextupole magnets are installed to create an angular kick to deflect mainly halo particles. Deflected particles can then be stopped by a regular vertical collimator placed in between the two skew sextupole magnets. The vertical collimator can then be opened much wider than typical vertical collimators. Since the

⁵ betatron function of this collimator is small, the wakefield contribution of the NLC to the machine impedance, and hence, to the TMCI threshold is negligible. We can tighten this collimator and relax other vertical collimators to increase the TMCI limit while keeping the IR beam backgrounds at acceptable levels. The idea of NLC was initially proposed in the 1990s [\[25,](#page-159-0) [26\]](#page-159-1), but SuperKEKB is the ¹⁰ world's first collider to install NLC and test it.

The first target of the luminosity is $1 \times 10^{35}\,\rm cm^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ after the LS1. By the strat-egy shown in Fig. [2.8,](#page-21-0) we plan to increase the luminosity up to $2.4 \times 10^{35} \,\rm cm^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ by the second long shutdown (LS2), when further upgrade is expected to achieve more than $6 \times 10^{35} \,\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$. Table [2.2](#page-21-1) lists the machine parameters for these

15 milestones after the LS1. During the LS1, a new beam collimation system, the "nonlinear collimator," will be installed in the LER to reduce transverse impedance with a beam background mitigation. We have achieved the designed number of bunches. Therefore, we attempt to increase the bunch current toward the target luminosity while suppressing the beam blowup.

²⁰ **2.3 Future plans and prospect**

During the next long shutdown, several major modifications are considered to further improve the machine's performance. Modification of the IR, an upgrade of the injection complex, a new HER beam transport (BT) line [2.9,](#page-23-0) an increase of the HER RF stations, and aging measures for various components are among ²⁵ modification candidate items. A new BT line aims at keeping the emittance growth by coherent synchrotron radiation (CSR) and incoherent synchrotron radiation (ISR) under control. Addtitional RF stations are needed to increase the stored beam to the design current in the HER.

While discussions on when to start LS2 are underway, consideration has al-³⁰ ready begun regarding modifications during the LS2 period. The modifications must be effective enough that the integrated luminosity lost during LS2 is recovered quickly afterwards. Design and evaluation progress of the IR upgrade, which is one of the upgrade items, are described in the following subsection.

2.4 Interaction region design

³⁵ Editor: *M. Masuzawa, N. Ohuchi*

It should be noted that this is not a completely new design from a blank slate. We have begun to reconsider the issues left unfinished at the SuperKEKB IR design stage. We are currently considering items that would be possible to renovate over several years. Below is a status report about the new IR design.

Figure 2.9: A proposed new beam transport line and the present beam transport line for the HER.

2.4.1 Introduction of the IR optics

The SuperKEKB interaction region (IR) is designed to achieve extremely small beta functions at the IP, β_y^* in the vertical direction, and β_x^* in the horizontal direction. Superconducting magnets QC1s and QC2s provide the focusing mag-⁵ netic field required to squeeze down β_y^* and β_x^* , respectively [\[27\]](#page-159-2).

The solenoid field of Belle II is fully compensated with the superconducting compensation solenoids (anti-solenoid) on each side of the IP.

$$
\int_{\mathbb{P}} B_z(s)ds = 0
$$
\n(2.8)

The crossing angle between the Belle II solenoid axis and each beam axis of the LER and HER is 41.5 mrad. The X–Y coupling, and the horizontal and ver-¹⁰ tical dispersions are corrected to be zero at the IP by skew quadrupole magnets and horizontal and vertical dipole magnets on each side of the IP. In the LER, the chromatic X–Y coupling arising from solenoid field overlapping on QC1s are corrected by using rotatable sextupole magnets.

Vertical emittance ϵ_y is estimated approximately as follows:

$$
\epsilon_y \propto \left(\frac{p}{\rho}\right)^2 \int H(s)ds \propto B_x^4(s) \tag{2.9}
$$

where,

$$
B_x(s) \cong -\frac{x}{2} B'_z(s) = -\frac{s\phi}{2} B'_z(s).
$$
 (2.10)

A half crossing angle ϕ or/and $B_z'(s)$ should be decreased to reduce the vertical emittance. Because decreasing half crossing angle ϕ requires a complete change of the IR, we focus on modifying $B_z(s)$ such that its differential along beam trajectory $B_z'(s)$ becomes smaller than that in the present system.

⁵ **2.4.2 Characteristics of the new interaction region**

The new design concept of the IR upgrade is to make the beam trajectory as parallel to the QC1 magnet axis as possible to cancel the X–Y coupling and chromaticity between the IP and QC1 as close to zero as possible and minimize ϵ_y by redesigning the $B_z(s)$ profile. The vertical offsets and the rotations of QC1P and

10 QC2P and the horizontal offsets of QC1E and QC2E are expected to be considerably smaller than the present values with the new anti-solenoid field design and with incorporating the magnetic yokes on QC1P.The design concepts of the new IR are listed below and shown schematically in Fig. [2.10.](#page-25-0)

• Separation of the solenoid field and QC1P

• QC1P relocation, closer to the IP by 100 mm (from the present $L^* = 935 \text{ mm}$) to 835 mm)

The magnetic field from the line current distribution was evaluated using Opera3D [\[28\]](#page-159-3), where the magnetic field by the Belle II solenoid coil is included. As is shown in Fig. [2.11,](#page-25-1) the peak field becomes lower with the new IR, resulting ²⁰ in thinner coil. The detector solenoid field is cancellation between IP and QC1P. The cryostats are included in Fig. [2.12](#page-26-0) and Fig. [2.13](#page-26-1) for the current and new

QCS system, respectively.

Some parts of the cryostat and the Belle II detector (e.r., the pixel detector support structure) interfere, on the forward side. The thinner solenoid coil cre-²⁵ ates more space between the detector and the cryostat, which makes cabling easier around the cryostat. It should be noted though that these are very simplified preliminary drawings. Drawings with final dimensions cannot be produced until the magnet design and detailed design of each part are finalized.

2.4.3 Optics evaluation

³⁰ Optics evaluation was carried focusing on the effects on the dynamic aperture and Touschek lifetime, chromatic coupling, and the vertical emittance. Neither Beam-beam effects and octupole correction are not included in this evaluation. The R-side backward compensation solenoid is not implemented in the optical evaluation model being discussed. The upstream vertical orbit and vertical emit-³⁵ tance are provisional values.

Fig. [2.14](#page-30-0) and Fig. [2.15](#page-30-0) compare the dynamic aperture and Touschek lifetime of the present IR lattice (sler 1704) and the new IR lattice (V21-r0g0) for LER, respectively. The design parameters, such as $0.27\,\mathrm{mm}$ for β_y^* , were used as inputs parameters for the simulation. By relocating the QC1P 100 mm closer to the IP, Touschek lifetime increases from 261 seconds to 424 seconds.

Figure 2.10: Comparison between the current QCS configuration (top) and the new QCS configuration. Anti-solenoid coils and iron (or permendur) shield are indicated in red and green, respectively.

Figure 2.11: Comparison between the current and the new anti-solenoid field profile of B_x and B_z by the magnet configurations in Fig. [2.10](#page-25-0) for the LER. Anti-solenoid coil cancels the magnetic field generated by the Belle II detector solenoid before QC1P.

Table [2.3](#page-27-1) summarizes chromatic X–Y coupling for the present and new IR lattice designs. It is shown that the chromatic X–Y coupling parameters, $\partial R_1/\partial \delta$, $\partial R_2/\partial \delta$, $\partial R_3/\partial \delta$ and $\partial R_4/\partial \delta$, are few orders of magnitude smaller with the new IR with/without the sextupole correction on. A clear improvement is seen with ⁵ the new IR lattice.

The present and new IR orbit and the beta functions are shown in Fig. [2.16](#page-31-0)

Figure 2.12: The current QCS system with cryostat. The red, brown, yellow, blue, cyan and green shaded areas corresponds to the vacuum vessels of the cryostat, the liquid helium vessels, the tungsten radiation shields, the anti-solenoid coils, the magnetic yokes/shields, and the QC1P magnets, respectively. The left side corresponds to the backward side.

Figure 2.13: The new QCS system with cryostat. The red, brown, yellow, blue, cyan and green shaded areas corresponds to the vacuum vessels of the cryostat, the liquid helium vessels, the tungsten radiation shields, the anti-solenoid coils, the magnetic yokes/shields, and the QC1P magnets, respectively. The left side corresponds to the backward side.

and [2.17,](#page-31-1) respectively. The orbit displacement is $\sim 10 \,\mu \text{m}$ at OC1, while it is about 1 mm with the present lattice. The dispersion functions of the present and new lattice are shown in Fig. [2.18](#page-32-0) and [2.19,](#page-32-1) respectively. The vertical emittance from the IR is calculated to be 14 fm, which is negligibly small.

⁵ To summarize, 1) dynamic aperture and Touschek life time is improved by relocating QC1 closer to the IP, 2) chromatic X–Y coupling improves significantly, 3) the contribution to the vertical emittance from the IR is in an order of several

Table 2.3: Chromatic Coupling comparison between the design lattice and the new lattice with (ON) and without (OFF) chromatic coupling correction by rotatable sextupole magnets.

Lattice	Sext.cor	$\partial R_1/\partial \delta$	$\partial R_2/\partial \delta$	$\partial R_3/\partial \delta$	$\partial R_4/\partial \delta$
sler_1704	ON	-8.9×10^{-3}	4.0×10^{-3}	-5.0×10^{1}	29
sler_1704	OFF	-2.3	-1.0×10^{-2}	-4.2×10^{2}	-6.1×10^{2}
$V21-r0g0$	ON	2.3×10^{-5}	-6.0×10^{-6}	-4.4×10^{-2}	5.5×10^{-3}
$V21-r0g0$	OFF	1.1×10^{-1}	2.8×10^{-4}	8.1	2.6×10^{1}

tens of femtometers. The new IR removes the difficulties in luminosity tuning that we are facing now. Luminosity tuning is expected to become easier with the new IR.

2.4.4 R&D of Nb3Sn cables and QC1P quadrupole

- ⁵ QC1P must be designed more compactly so that it can fit into the smaller space when moved 100 mm closer to the IP than its current position. Therefore, it is necessary to develop superconducting cables that can operate at higher current densities. The design current density of the new QC1P superconducting cable is twice that of the current QC1P.
- 10 Nb₃Sn is known to have a higher critical current density and critical temperature than NbTi, which is commonly used as an accelerator magnet material [\[29\]](#page-159-4). In case of $Nb₃Sn$ quadrupole magnet, the temperature margin for keeping the superconducting condition of the magnet can be doubled compared to the current NbTi quadrupole magnet [\[30\]](#page-159-5). This effect is very important to have the stable
- ¹⁵ beam operation to the larger beam currents (twice larger than the present) after LS2. The development of superconducting magnets using $Nb₃Sn$ cables to produce a required magnetic field with a quite high current density in the superconducting coil has been carried out though there are many items that need to be considered and investigated to be used for QC1P. The items include is-
- ²⁰ sues such as countermeasures against quenches caused by magnetic flux jumps within a superconductor, and time decay of the electromagnet magnetic field due to magnetic flux creep. Fabrication of a small coil using $Nb₃Sn$ also needs to be confirmed. $Nb₃Sn$ magnet fabrication is quite difficult because of the brittleness of the material compared to NbTi. To produce $Nb₃Sn$ as an A15 compound, the
- ²⁵ coil needs to be heated over 650 degrees Celsius for tens of hours after completing the coil winding. The heat-treated coils are very brittle and need to be impregnated and assembled into the magnet very carefully; the higher multipole fields in the magnet must be at the level of a few 10^{-4} of the main quadrupole field.
- ³⁰ At present, we have the following development schedule:
	- Study of the $Nb₃Sn$ cable for the new QC1P magnet.
	- Production of the $Nb₃Sn$ cable, and design of the prototype QC1P and the R&D coil.
- Construction of the first R&D coil and a mirror magnet [\[31\]](#page-159-6), followed by a test of the coil in the mirror magnet configuration.
- Review of the proto-type QC1P magnet design based on the test results of the mirror magnet and confirmation of the design.
- \bullet Start and completion of the construction of the first Nb₃Sn prototype QC1P magnet after fabrication of 4+1 coils. The magnet will be tested, and the magnetic field measurements will be performed.

We will proceed with feasibility studies of $Nb₃Sn$ cables for QC1P and possibly ¹⁰ for the anti-solenoid coils.

2.4.5 R&D program for the new IR

The remaining tasks are listed below.

A detailed machine optics study, including beam pipe geometry optimization, is essential to identify the narrowest machine aperture, where the majority of IR ¹⁵ beam loss concentration is expected based on our operation experience. The new outcome of this study might require additional detector shielding installation around the final focusing magnets with potential impact on the vertex detector envelope.

Regarding the second compensation solenoid:

²⁰ • Optical modeling, evaluation of effects on trajectory and optics optimization of LER R side (upstream side of IP) trajectory with consideration of the effect on the detector background.

For reviewing and evaluating machine performance:

- ²⁵ **–** Are the assumed collision parameters, lifetime, stored beam current, and injector performance consistent?
	- **–** Is it necessary to construct an evaluation model for detector background estimate?
- * The difficulties of this scheme of large Piwinski angle $_{\rm 30}$ collision at β_y^* of $0.3\,\mathrm{mm}$ with Crab Waist are, narrow dynamic aperture and short Touschek lifetime. The maximum stored beam current is determined by the balance between injection capacity and lifetime while controlling the background to the detector.
- ³⁵ Evaluation with beam-beam, wake field and machine errors, which is necessary to estimate actual performance.
	- **–** We need to identify the causes of the current machine performance defects and establish reproduction techniques and evaluation models on simulation.

Tasks required for construction:

- Completion of the HER IR optics
	- **–** Review of horizontal orbit design and correction of optics due to introduction of magnetic shielding to QC1P.
- \bullet Redesign of outside QCS region (IP \pm 4 m) for both LER and HER
	- **–** The model being considered in the LER has not been tested to see if it will physically fit in the existing tunnel.This point of view also needs to be considered in the actual construction of beamlines.
- ¹⁰ **–** Add and relocate elements needed for matching/adjusting luminosity tuning knobs, resolve interference with tunnel boundary and HER.
	- **–** HER also needs to reflect IR horizontal orbit change.

Figure 2.16: The present orbit and beta functions for $\beta_y^* = 0.27 \,\mathrm{mm}$.The horizontal and vertical beta functions are indicated by red and blue lines, respectively.

Figure 2.17: The new orbit and beta functions for $\beta_y^* = 0.27 \,\text{mm}$. The horizontal and vertical beta functions are indicated by red and blue lines, respectively.

Figure 2.18: The present dispersion functions for $\beta_y^* = 0.27$ mm. The horizontal and vertical beta functions are indicated by red and blue lines, respectively.

Figure 2.19: The new dispersion functions for $\beta_y^* = 0.27$ mm. The horizontal and vertical beta functions are indicated by red and blue lines, respectively.

Chapter 3

Machine Detector Interface

Editor: *H. Nakayama, A. Natochii*

3.1 Beam backgrounds and countermeasures

⁵ Editor: *H.Nakayama, A.Natochii*

Here, we briefly review the main sources of beam-induced backgrounds, usually simply referred to as beam backgrounds for short. Beam backgrounds can ¹⁰ arise from particle losses from the beam during machine operation, leading to electromagnetic (EM) showers. Secondary particles from such showers then cause higher hit rates and other detrimental effects in Belle II. While this is the typical example, any aspect of machine operation, even the intentional collision of beams, which results in higher Belle II occupancy or radiation dose, can be ¹⁵ considered a beam background. Since SuperKEKB is designed to operate at much higher beam currents and collision luminosities than its predecessor KEKB, the IR backgrounds are also expected to be much higher.

3.1.1 Particle scattering

Beam particles circulating in SuperKEKB may undergo single-beam processes ²⁰ caused by i) scattering with residual gas molecules due to Bremsstrahlung and Coulomb interactions and ii) Coulomb scattering between particles in the same beam bunch, commonly referred to as the Touschek effect. These processes lead to the scattered particles falling out of the stable orbit and reaching the physical or dynamic aperture of the machine. This creates EM showers when these stray ²⁵ particles hit the beam pipe walls. The beam-gas background rate is proportional

to the vacuum pressure and the beam current, while the Touschek background is proportional to the beam current squared and inversely proportional to the number of bunches, beam size, and the third power of the beam energy.

3.1.2 Colliding beams

While particle collisions at the IP are the goal of SuperKEKB, there are several undesirable collision processes that have very high cross sections but are of little interest for physics measurements. Examples are radiative Bhabha scattering $_5$ $(e^+e^- \rightarrow e^+e^-\gamma)$ and two-photon processes $(e^+e^- \rightarrow e^+e^-e^+e^-)$. These processes increase the Belle II occupancy and radiation dose, and we refer to these increases as luminosity background. The rate of this background component is proportional to the luminosity.

3.1.3 Synchrotron radiation (SR)

¹⁰ X-rays are emitted when electrons or positrons pass through the strong magnetic field of the QCS or dipole magnets upstream and downstream of the IP. SR can potentially damage the inner layers of the vertex detector. Because SR power is proportional to the beam energy squared and magnetic field strength squared, X-rays from the HER are the main concern.

¹⁵ **3.1.4 Beam injection**

Since the beam lifetime, which is limited mainly by Touschek losses, is of order 10–60 min, SuperKEKB is operated using a so-called top-up injection scheme where the bunches are continuously refilled to keep the current stable. Due to optics mismatches between the injection chain and the main ring, injected par-²⁰ ticle bunches do not enter the aperture of the machine perfectly, resulting in

higher particle losses from injected bunches until they stabilize ($\sim 10 \,\text{ms}$).

3.1.5 Sudden beam losses

During otherwise stable machine operation, unexplained beam instabilities and beam losses may occasionally occur in one of the rings. Such losses can occur ²⁵ in one shot at a specific location around the ring due to machine element failure or due to the beam interacting with dust particles in the beam pipe. In extreme cases, high-intensity EM showers can lead to detector or collimator damage or superconducting magnet quenches. For example, eight such LER beam losses led to QCS quenching in the February – June 2022 run period.

³⁰ **3.1.6 Head-tail instabilities**

In linear accelerators (linacs), when a dense bunch of charged particles travels through the accelerator structure, the front part of the bunch (head) induces an EM wakefield which deflects the rear part of the bunch (tail). After some time, the tail oscillates around the head trajectory, which remains unperturbed.

³⁵ These oscillations may cause particle losses on the aperture of the machine. This process is referred to as Beam Break-Up (BBU) instability. In a synchrotron machine like SuperKEKB, the RF field induces a longitudinal focusing of the bunch, creating a collective transverse motion with head-tail modes of betatron and synchrotron oscillation coupling. Below a certain bunch current, this oscillation remains stable while at the threshold value, the growth rate of the tail is faster than the synchrotron period so that the head-tail modes are destroyed, and the beam becomes unstable. This process is referred to as the Transverse Mode Cou-

⁵ pling Instability (TMCI) [\[32\]](#page-159-7). Since the TMCI threshold depends on the most narrow and steep aperture in the ring, the bunch current threshold is usually calculated considering only collimators. It can be defined as follows [\[32,](#page-159-7) [33\]](#page-159-8):

$$
I_{\rm th} = \frac{C_1 f_s E/e}{\sum_j \beta_j k_j},\tag{3.1}
$$

where I_{th} is the upper limit on the bunch current, $f_{\text{s}} = 2.13 \text{ kHz}$ or $f_{\text{s}} = 2.80 \text{ kHz}$ is the synchrotron frequency for the LER or HER, respectively, E is the beam

 $_{10}$ $\,$ energy, e is the unit charge, β_j and $k_\mathrm{j} \sim d_\mathrm{j}^{-\frac{3}{2}}$ are the beta function and kick factor, as a function of the aperture d_j [\[34\]](#page-159-9), for the *j*th collimator, respectively. Usually, the constant C_1 is equal to 8 or 2π [\[33\]](#page-159-8); however, for SuperKEKB, $C_1 \approx 4\pi$ is found to be a more realistic value based on machine studies [\[35\]](#page-159-10) conducted in 2021 – 2022. Additional machine elements with a variable aperture, such as ¹⁵ the IR beam pipe, can be included in Eq. [3.1](#page-35-1) by extending the sum over $\beta_1 k_i$ to include terms both for collimators and these additional elements.

3.1.7 Countermeasures

In the last decade, we have developed a comprehensive set of countermeasures against each of these background sources. We use collimators at specific loca-²⁰ tions to suppress single-beam and injection backgrounds by stopping stray particles before they reach the IR. Vacuum scrubbing helps us reduce each ring's vacuum pressure, thus lowering the beam-gas scattering rate [\[36\]](#page-159-11). A heavy metal shield was installed to protect the inner detectors against EM showers from beam losses in the IR. A polyethylene+lead shield inside the ECL [\[37\]](#page-159-12) protects the ECL

- ²⁵ crystals and photodiodes from neutrons. Similarly, the inner layers of the ARICH were replaced with a boron-doped polyethylene shield against neutrons. The incoming beam pipes of the IR collimate most of the SR photons and suppress their reflections thanks to the design geometry and a ridge structure on the inner beam pipe surface [\[38\]](#page-160-0). To protect the vertex detector against residual SR,
- 30 the inner surface of the IP beryllium beam pipe is coated with a $10 \mu m$ thick gold layer. The newly constructed Damping Ring (DR) reduces the emittance of injected positrons, thereby suppressing injection beam losses. We apply an injection veto on the Belle II Level-1 trigger, to avoid recording high beam losses when the injection bunch crosses the IR, for about 10 ms after each injection. In
- ³⁵ addition, we continuously perform injection chain tuning to improve injection efficiency and reduce injection background. To monitor the beam losses in the IR, a system based on single-crystal synthetic diamond sensors, so-called Diamonds, is used since the start of the SuperKEKB operation. The system records the radiation dose-rates in positions close to the inner detectors of the Belle II
- ⁴⁰ experiment, and protects both the detector and accelerator components against destructive beam losses, by participating in the beam-abort system [\[39\]](#page-160-1). It also
provides complementary information for the dedicated studies of beam-related backgrounds [\[40\]](#page-160-0). To protect Belle II against abnormal beam losses, the beam abort system has been complemented by two new systems based on sCintillation Light And Waveform Sensors (CLAWS) detectors [\[41\]](#page-160-1) near the IR and CsI-

⁵ crystals around each ring. The CLAWS system provides an additional fast beam abort signal, while the CsI-based sensors help to locate the initial beam loss locations along the ring.

Furthermore, as discussed in Ref. [\[42\]](#page-160-2), during LS1, the machine and detector protection system is planned to be upgraded. This includes additional ¹⁰ neutron and EM shielding around QCS magnets and Belle II, heavy-metal shielding around IR bellows, new collimators, and a new IP beam pipe. So far, all mentioned upgrades have not been implemented in the official MC sample production code, leading to presumably overestimated detector BG rates at higher luminosity.

¹⁵ **3.2 Background status**

Since the start of the SuperKEKB commissioning with a fully assembled Belle II detector in 2019, we have performed several dedicated beam background studies. Usually, the measurement starts from a single-beam configuration where only one beam is filled with a beam. Changing the number of bunches allows ²⁰ us to disentangle beam-gas and Touschek backgrounds during beam decay measurements when the injection is stopped. Repeating this measurement for the LER and HER, we can extract background sensitivities for each sub-detector separately. Then, by extrapolating the single-beam backgrounds to the collision study when both beams are filled, we subtract the single-beam contribution from

- ²⁵ the observable and estimate the luminosity background sensitivity. A detailed procedure of Belle II background measurements is discussed elsewhere [\[10\]](#page-157-0). For example, Belle II background rates measured in June 2021 are shown in Fig. [3.1.](#page-38-0) The data was recorded with a betatron function at the IP of $\beta^*_y = 1\,\mathrm{mm}$, beam currents of $I_{\text{LER}} = 732.6 \text{ mA}$ and $I_{\text{HER}} = 647.2 \text{ mA}$, with ring-averaged
- 30 beam pipe pressures of $\overline{P}_{\text{LER}} = 88 \text{ nPa}$ and $\overline{P}_{\text{HER}} = 24 \text{ nPa}$, $n_{\text{b}} = 1174$ bunches in each ring, and a luminosity of $\mathcal{L} = 2.6 \times 10^{34} \,\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$. Current background rates in Belle II are acceptable and, in most cases, well below the limits listed in Table [3.1.](#page-37-0) The TOP limit before LS1 is related to the replacement of TOP conventional PMTs planned for LS1. At the same time, the limit after LS1 is associated
- ³⁵ with the replacement of ALD PMTs in LS2 and the longevity of life-extended ALD PMTs. The TOP luminosity background is assumed to be 0.925 MHz/PMT per $1 \times 10^{35} \,\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$. The upper background rate limit quoted for the Diamond read-out electronics can be increased by selecting a lower signal amplification. The KLM detector limit corresponds to the muon reconstruction efficiency drop
- ⁴⁰ of about 10%. Rates in the KLM appear high, but this is an analysis artifact: the barrel RPCs have a high pedestal rate associated with the noise floor. The KLM is a rather robust detector, with gradual, temporary efficiency reduction but no permanent damage at high rates. A dedicated analysis that suppresses the pedestal in KLM-RPC layers is in progress.

Detector	BG rate limit	Measured BG				
Diamonds	$1-2$ rad/s	< 132 mrad/s				
PXD	3%	0.1%				
SVD L3, L4, L5, L6	$4.7\%, 2.4\%, 1.8\%, 1.2\%$	$< 0.22\%$				
CDC	$200 \mathrm{kHz}/\mathrm{wire}$	22.3 kHz/wire				
ARICH	10 MHz/HAPD	$0.5\,\mathrm{MHz}/\mathrm{HAPD}$				
Barrel KLM L3	$50\,\mathrm{MHz}$	$4\,\mathrm{MHz}$				
non-luminosity BG						
	Before LS1 After LS1					
TOP ALD	3 MHz/ PMT 5 MHz/ PMT	$1.8\,\mathrm{MHz}/\mathrm{PMT}$				
+ luminosity BG						

Table 3.1: Background rate limits for different Belle II detector sub-systems. The third column shows the total measured background rate in June 2021, excluding the pedestal rate.

Figure [3.1](#page-38-0) shows that dominant backgrounds for all sub-systems are the LER single-beam (beam-gas and Touschek) and luminosity backgrounds. The HER single-beam background is at the level of 10% for most of the detectors except for the ARICH, which is placed on the FWD side of the Belle II and hence sees more

- ⁵ forward-directed particle losses in the IR from the electron beam. QCS-BWD-315, BP-FWD-325, and QCS-FWD-225 indicate backward QCS, beam pipe, and forward QCS Diamond detectors, respectively, with the higher dose rate. Barrel KLM L3 corresponds to the innermost RPC layer in the barrel region of the KLM detector. TOP ALD shows the averaged background over ALD-type MCP-PMTs, 10 slots from 3 to 9.
- The current level of the SR is of no concern in terms of occupancy for the innermost layers of the vertex detector. However, in the case of a large increase, SR may cause inhomogeneities in PXD module irradiation, which would make it more difficult to compensate by adjusting the operation voltages of the affected 15 modules.
-

The high injection background observed in 2022b led to a visible degradation of CDC performance shortly after injection, caused by a voltage drop in the HV resistor chain and space charge effects.

Although currently at an acceptable level, some detectors started to see single-²⁰ event upsets (SEU) of FPGAs electronics boards in 2021 and 2022. These SEUs are presumably from neutrons created in EM showers. Therefore, during LS1, we plan to introduce an additional Belle II shielding against neutrons and EM showers originating from the accelerator tunnel and final focusing magnets [\[42\]](#page-160-2).

During the same running period, studies revealed single-beam and single-²⁵ bunch instabilities that cause vertical emittance blow-up in the LER. This occurred at lower bunch currents ($\sim 1 \text{mA/bunch}$) than predicted by a standard TMCI theory ($\sim 2 \text{mA/bunch}$), limiting the bunch current at the time. Machine studies showed that the instability threshold relates to the collimator settings and the vertical beam size inside the QCS beam pipe structure. This observa-³⁰ tion implies that the beam instability observed in the LER is not simply a TMCI

38

Figure 3.1: Extrapolated Belle II backgrounds from measurements in June 2021. Each column is a stacked histogram. From [\[10\]](#page-157-0).

phenomenon and might force us to eventually open collimators at higher beam currents and accept higher detector backgrounds. Moreover, dedicated studies held in 2022 show that the bunch current threshold before the instabilities occur also depends on the interplay between the machine impedance, which is mainly ⁵ dictated by collimator settings and the IR beam pipe aperture, and the bunchby-bunch feedback system [\[43\]](#page-160-3) adjusted to dump the frequency of the 0 mode (vertical betatron tune: $\nu_{\rm v}$), while the vertical beam size blow-up is attributed to oscillations caused by the –1 mode ($\nu_{\rm y}$ – $\nu_{\rm s}$, where $\nu_{\rm s}$ is a synchrotron tune) [\[44\]](#page-160-4).

- In order to reach the luminosity of $4.7 \times 10^{34}\,\rm cm^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ in 2022, we gradually ¹⁰ increased beam currents above 1 A. This consequently induced more frequent sudden beam losses (SBLs) in both rings. The SBLs usually appeared at the bunch current above 0.7 mA/bunch, limiting the maximum beam currents and hence the collision luminosity. Some of the larger beam loss events caused severe damage to collimators, which made it challenging to effectively control beam ¹⁵ backgrounds in Belle II. Moreover, some events also induced high radiation doses
- in the IR, damaging $4-5\%$ of switcher channels in the PXD detector and causing QCS quenches.

Figure [3.2](#page-39-0) illustrates the impact of the damaged horizontal collimator in the LER (D06H3) on Belle II backgrounds. The collimator surfaces closest to the ²⁰ beam were damaged due to the injection kicker failure steering some part of the main beam horizontally toward the first horizontal collimator D06H3, which is located about 1.2 km from the IP. By increasing the collimator aperture (black, solid line), which is defined as the distance between collimator jaws, the measured background for the most vulnerable Belle II sub-systems, CDC (red, dashed ²⁵ line), and TOP (blue, dot-dashed line), dropped by about 40%.

Although the D06H3 collimator was not damaged in SBL events, Fig. [3.2](#page-39-0) clearly demonstrates that opening the damaged collimator helps reduce Belle II backgrounds. Therefore, in 2022 after more than 50 SBLs, several damaged collimators were opened, which led to a significant Belle II background increase.

Figure 3.2: The measured on December 2, 2021 (JST) Belle II background as a function of the LER horizontal collimator aperture. The data were taken during LER single-beam operation at the beam current of 750 mA with 1174 bunches. The periodic structure of the background observables is due to top-up injection.

3.3 Background simulation procedure

We use several dedicated Monte-Carlo (MC) simulation tools to predict beam backgrounds at different machine settings and investigate possible mitigation ⁵ measures. In addition, the prepared MC samples, stored in so-called *BG overlay* files, are used for software training and detector performance studies.

For the simulation of beam-gas and Touschek scattering, we first use the Strategic Accelerator Design (SAD) [\[23\]](#page-158-0) software developed at KEK. Bunches of scattered particles (e^+ or e^-) are generated at different locations around the 10 ring and tracked for 1000 machine turns. The code collects the coordinates of particles, which reach the aperture of the machine, i.e., the inner beam pipe wall or collimators. These particles are then considered as lost. We recently improved the simulation of how beam particles interact with collimators. We have implemented a more realistic collimator profile and now include particle scattering

¹⁵ off collimator materials. The measured vacuum pressure distribution around the ring is now also used to improve the beam-gas background simulation. Here, the average ring residual gas pressure at the center of the beam pipe is defined as:

$$
\bar{P} = \bar{P}_0 + 3 \times d\bar{P}/dI \times I,
$$
\n(3.2)

where the *base* pressure, \bar{P}_0 , is the average ring pressure when there is no beam $(I = 0 \text{ A})$, and the *dynamic* pressure, $d\overrightarrow{P}/d\overrightarrow{I} \times I$, is the average pressure increase per unit current, physically caused by gas molecules being released from

⁵ the inner beam pipe walls. Both the base and dynamic pressures are estimated from vacuum pressure measurements with cold cathode gauges (CCG) installed around each ring. The factor 3 in the ring pressure formula is used to take into account the vacuum conductance between the beam pipe and CCGs, while the measured base pressure is assumed to be the same as seen by the beam. Further ¹⁰ details about the multi-turn particle tracking in SAD for SuperKEKB can be found

in Ref. [\[10,](#page-157-0) [45\]](#page-160-5).

At the next step, the lost particles in SAD are passed to Geant4 [\[46,](#page-160-6) [47,](#page-160-7) [48\]](#page-161-0) for further simulation. We only keep particles lost near the interaction region, out to $\pm 30 \text{ m}$ from the IP. The Geant4 software is embedded into the Belle II ¹⁵ Analysis Software Framework (basf2) [\[11,](#page-157-1) [49\]](#page-161-1). A realistic description of the geometry of the detector and accelerator tunnel is used to simulate the resulting electromagnetic showers and secondary particles produced inside and outside the detector. Energy deposits in detectors are digitized and can then be compared against dedicated single-beam and luminosity background measurements.

²⁰ To produce the MC samples for the luminosity background due to radiative Bhabha scattering and the two-photon process, we use the same Geant4-based software and geometry, but SAD is not required.

The current accuracy of our beam background simulation is illustrated by Fig. [3.3,](#page-41-0) which shows ratios of measured to simulated background rates, so-²⁵ called Data/MC ratios. The ratios are shown separately for different background components. These ratios are generally within one order of magnitude from unity, except for the shown innermost Barrel KLM RPC layer, where the simulated BG is still vastly underestimated. This is a substantial improvement compared to the early SuperKEKB commissioning phases in 2016 [\[50\]](#page-161-2) and 2018 [\[51\]](#page-161-3).

³⁰ Since the neutron shielding around Belle II is not ideal, neutrons can penetrate the detector and cause performance degradation. Our MC simulation predicts fast neutrons traveling from the accelerator tunnel towards Belle II due to i) single-beam losses at the collimators closest to the IR ($\sim 15\,\mathrm{m}$ from the IP) and ii) radiative Bhabha scattering producing photons parallel to the two beams at

³⁵ the IP. These photons follow the beams out of Belle II, resulting in localized hot spots in the beam pipes just outside of the detector ($\sim 10 \,\mathrm{m}$ from the IP) [\[52\]](#page-161-4). However, as discussed in Ref. [\[42\]](#page-160-2), during LS1, we plan to install additional concrete and polyethylene shielding around Belle II, which according to preliminary simulation, should reduce the neutron flux from the accelerator tunnel by up to

 40×2 a factor of 2.

Figure 3.3: Combined Data/MC ratios for LER (top, left), HER (top, right) singlebeam and Luminosity (bottom) backgrounds.

3.4 Background extrapolation

In this section, we discuss the Monte-Carlo simulation setup to predict beam backgrounds in Belle II at the luminosity above $3 \times 10^{35}\,\rm cm^{-2}\,s^{-1}$, so-called *after LS2* operation. The outcome of this exercise is the predicted Belle II background ⁵ rate in different sub-detectors at higher luminosity with expected detector safety factors^{[1](#page-41-1)}.

Currently, the target instantaneous luminosity is 6.0×10^{35} cm⁻² s⁻¹. It should allow us to collect $50 ab^{-1}$ of data within the next decade. However, at the time we are preparing this CDR, we do not have a so-called *working machine lattice* 10 to reach the target at the design optics with $\beta_{\rm y}^* = 0.3\,\rm mm$, see Table [3.2](#page-42-0) (Target column). Moreover, the final design of the IR magnet system and beam pipes is not completed, and it is still under discussion; see Section [2.4.](#page-22-0) According to the

¹The safety factor is defined as a ratio between the detector limit and predicted background rate. It shows how much the background level can increase before reaching the detector limit.

Table 3.2: SuperKEKB parameters used for the background extrapolation study. β^* , \mathcal{L} , I , \bar{P}_{eff} , n_{b} , ε , σ_z , and CW stand for the betatron function at the IP, luminosity, beam current, average beam pipe pressure, number of bunches, equilibrium beam emittance, bunch length, and Crab-Waist sextupoles, respectively. The numbers in columns Before LS2 and Target are from Ref. [\[10\]](#page-157-0), while Design column numbers are adopted from Ref. [\[38\]](#page-160-8).

Setup	Before LS2	Target	Design
$\beta_{\rm v}^*$ (LER/HER) [mm]	0.6/0.6	0.27/0.3	0.27/0.3
$\beta_{\rm x}^*$ (LER/HER) [mm]	60/60	32/25	32/25
\mathcal{L} [×10 ³⁵ cm ⁻² s ⁻¹]	2.8	6.0	8.0
$I(LER/HER)$ [A]	2.52/1.82	2.80/2.00	3.6/2.6
\bar{P}_{eff} (LER/HER) [nPa]	48/17	52/18	133/133
$n_{\rm b}$ [bunches]	1576	1761	2500
$\varepsilon_{\rm x}$ (LER/HER) [nm]	4.6/4.5	3.2/4.6	3.2/4.6
$\varepsilon_{\rm v}/\varepsilon_{\rm x}$ (LER/HER) [%]	1/1	0.27/0.28	0.27/0.28
$\sigma_{\rm z}$ (LER/HER) [mm]	8.27/7.60	8.25/7.58	6.0/6.0
CW	ON	OFF	OFF

dedicated studies discussed in Refs. [\[42,](#page-160-2) [10\]](#page-157-0), the highest possible luminosity that could be achieved at the current SuperKEKB is 2.8×10^{35} cm⁻² s⁻¹ at $\beta_{y}^{*} = 0.6$ mm, see Table [3.2](#page-42-0) (Before LS2 column).

- The prediction for the BG rates before LS2, with known machine configura-⁵ tion, is made with the full BG simulation described before, re-scaling each BG component with the measured average Data/MC ratios, shown in first column of Table [3.3.](#page-43-0) Belle II background rates expected with these conditions, shown in Fig. [3.4,](#page-43-1) are high but acceptably below detector limits listed in Table [3.1.](#page-37-0)
- On the contrary, given all the mentioned uncertainties in the machine con-¹⁰ figuration after LS2 (i.e., machine-detector protection upgrade during LS1, final focusing magnet redesign during LS2, collimator relocation, and the injection chain tuning), an alternative solution to roughly estimate background rates in the detector was used for this extrapolation. The background predicted for conditions before LS2 are used as a starting point and scaling factors are applied to
- ¹⁵ the various components to extrapolate them to after LS2 in the following way. In addition to Data/MC ratios, the following three scaling factors are considered for single-beam background components: i) **x2** – *optimistic* **Scenario-1**, comes from a simple scaling of all single-beam background components from *before LS2* to *target* beam parameters (see Table [3.2\)](#page-42-0) following heuristic fit formulas
- ²⁰ discussed in Ref. [\[10\]](#page-157-0), ii) **x5** *nominal* **Scenario-2**, and iii) **x10** *conservative* **Scenario-3**, an arbitrary factor assuming that all single-beam backgrounds will be elevated by order of magnitude after LS2. Luminosity BG terms are instead correctly simulated for the target luminosity after LS2 over the luminosity before LS2, applying the measured Data/MC ratio.
- ²⁵ Figure [3.5](#page-44-0) shows background rates in the crucial sub-detectors estimated with basf2 (prerelease-07-00-00d) for after LS2 conditions at the luminosity of $6.0 \times$ 10³⁵ cm⁻² s⁻¹, for the three different Scenarios described previously. Table [3.3](#page-43-0)

Figure 3.4: Estimated Belle II background composition for predicted beam parameters before LS2. Each column is a stacked histogram of BG rates from dedicated MC samples produced with FTFP BERT HP Geant4 Physics List and scaled with average Data/MC ratios listed in Table [3.3,](#page-43-0) except for the column marker with a \blacklozenge symbol, where individual Data/MC ratios from Fig. [3.3](#page-41-0) are used instead. The red numbers in rectangles are detector safety factors, showing that Belle II should be able to operate safely until a luminosity of $2.8 \times 10^{35}\,\rm cm^{-2}\,s^{-1}$, with some important caveats, discussed in the text.

summarizes the various scaling factors applied to produce BG overlay files for after LS2 extrapolations starting from the before LS2 setup.

We note that there are a number of issues related to the scaling factors listed in Table [3.3](#page-43-0) and BG rates shown in Fig. [3.5](#page-44-0) that must be taken into account:

⁵ • **Data/MC ratios**

After producing BG overlay MC samples with the scaling factors listed in Table [3.3,](#page-43-0) we found a bug in the basf2 code used for the PXD occupancy calculation. This bug affected how particles interact with the detector, and it led to the overestimation of simulated BG rates used for the Data/MC analysis. ¹⁰ In addition, there was a bug related to the heuristic fit formula used for

Figure 3.5: Estimated beam background rates in Belle II for after LS2 operation at luminosity of $6.0 \times 10^{35} \,\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$. Solid bars represent BG overlay results with average Data/MC ratio and default Belle II Physics List, while hatched bars for ARICH and KLM stand for the BG levels with accurate neutron physics and individual Data/MC ratios. The histograms are not stacked. The numbers in rectangles are detector safety factors for Scenario-2: PXD, SVD, CDC, and TOP factors are calculated using solid bar numbers, while ARICH and KLM factors are shown as hatched bars. The units in brackets contain scaling factors used for better visualization, fitting all bars within the same vertical axis range; for example, the estimated nominal (green, Scenario-2) CDC Hit Rate should be read as $4 \times 50 = 200$ kHz/wire.

the estimation of the measured BG components in the Belle II sub-systems. Instead of using estimated base pressure in the ring $(7-15 \text{ nPa} [10])$ $(7-15 \text{ nPa} [10])$ $(7-15 \text{ nPa} [10])$, the code used a default value (10 nPa) . Thus, fixing the mentioned bugs results in a set of new, slightly different Data/MC ratios shown in Table [3.4,](#page-45-0) which ⁵ should be used for future campaigns of BG overlay files production. In Table [3.4,](#page-45-0) we assume the luminosity Data/MC ratio equals one based on our observation for the PXD detector since, applying all the mentioned bugfixes here, the luminosity ratio tends to be closer to unity. Moreover, the PXD BG is dominated by the luminosity component, while in outer sub-detectors, ¹⁰ the relative luminosity contribution is less significant. Therefore, applying the average sub-detector ratio for the luminosity BG, which is 0.81 (before bugfixes, see Table [3.3\)](#page-43-0) and 0.82 (after bugfixes, see Ref. [\[10\]](#page-157-0)), we could largely underestimate the PXD BG. While the conservative ratio equal to unity only slightly affects outer detector BGs.

¹⁵ • **Geant4 Physics List**

There is a difference in calculated BG rates using MC samples produced with *Default Belle II* Physics List [\[53\]](#page-161-5), which is used for the BG overlay files production, and *FTFP BERT HP* Physics List which is recommended by Geant4 for collider physics applications [\[54\]](#page-161-6) and used by the beam background group for the Data/MC analysis [\[42,](#page-160-2) [10\]](#page-157-0). The origin of this difference is unknown and under investigation. This issue leads to at least an order of magnitude higher neutron rate in the KLM for FTFP BERT HP compared to Default Belle II Physics List.

⁵ • **Beam-gas BG**

An additional bug in the BG overlay files production scripts was found. The code that mixes base and dynamic components of the beam-gas BG in proportions of 1:3 (see Eq. [3.2\)](#page-40-0) failed. This led to the underestimation of beam-gas BGs in Belle II by up to a factor of 4, with the fraction of the 10 beam-gas BG in the total BG of $10-20\%$.

The listed issues impact our estimation of beam-induced BGs in Belle II at the level of 30%, except for the ARICH and KLM, where the effect is much stronger. Due to i) the Geant4 Physics List issues mentioned above and ii) the usage of the average Data/MC ratios instead of individual ratios, the KLM BG rates are ¹⁵ presumably underestimated by about two orders of magnitude in BG overlay MC files. In addition, the average Data/MC ratios underestimate the ARICH BG estimation by a factor of three. Therefore, for accurate safety factor estimation, in addition to BG overlay levels shown as solid bars in Fig. [3.4,](#page-43-1) we added BG levels in hatched bars calculated with accurate neutron physics FTFP BERT HP ²⁰ and individual Data/MC ratios.

Nevertheless, the extrapolated BG rates for the three scenarios are still justifiable given the uncertainties associated with i) unknown machine and beam parameters at the target luminosity and ii) the set of assumptions regarding the usage of average Data/MC ratios (Table [3.3\)](#page-43-0), instead of individual ratios

- ²⁵ (Fig. [3.3\)](#page-41-0), for all detectors in addition to empirical scaling factors for singlebeam components of 2, 5, and 10. Therefore, we use the currently available BG overlay MC samples, which correspond to BG rates shown in Fig. [3.5](#page-44-0) at the luminosity of $6.0 \times 10^{35} \,\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$, for the detector performance study. Moreover, we note that previously mentioned machine and detector protection system up-
- ³⁰ grades planned for LS1 are not included in the current background simulation, which presumably leads to overestimated detector BG rates at higher luminosity.

Table 3.4: Updated average Belle II Data/MC ratios after the basf2 code bug fixing.

According to the BG rates estimation for Scenario-2, which is a compromise between optimistic Scenario-1 and conservative Scenario-3, Belle II backgrounds for the PXD, ARICH, and KLM are expected to stay well below detector limits 35 (i.e., safety factors > 1), while the SVD, CDC, and TOP are expected to be closer

to the detector limits listed in Table [3.1](#page-37-0) (i.e., safety factors \sim 1). Although

the TOP background is close to its limit, it will not constrain the luminosity increase but shorten the lifetime of MCP-PMTs, which in principle can be replaced during a normal summer shutdown. In addition, even without considering possible performance degradation due to high injection background, the CDC back-

- ⁵ ground level is estimated to be at the detector limit, which was defined based on Belle/KEKB operation and potentially is not applicable for Belle II/SuperKEKB operation. Therefore, we plan to study the latest MC samples to accurately update the limit for the CDC. Moreover, we still need to investigate the injection and SR BGs at higher luminosities by developing dedicated simulation models
- ¹⁰ and conducting machine studies. Therefore, at the current stage of our understanding, we prefer to keep both injection and SR BG rates not exceeding the measured level in June 2021 (see Fig. [3.1\)](#page-38-0), which corresponds to 10–20 % and 5–10 $\%$ of the total BG, respectively.
- Furthermore, for more accurate background estimation and Belle II perfor-¹⁵ mance study at the target luminosity of 6.0×10^{35} cm⁻² s⁻¹, the working machine lattice at $\beta_{y}^{*} = 0.3 \,\text{mm}$ is essential. Here is a list of known shortcomings and missing ingredients ordered by importance of the future BG estimation at the target luminosity after LS2:
	- Lack of working machine lattice at $\beta_y^* = 0.3 \text{ mm}$;
- ²⁰ Unsimulated detector shielding planned for LS1;
	- Unsimulated collimation system after LS1 upgrades;
	- Unclear vacuum pressure evolution at higher beam doses;
	- Lack of accurate SR and injection background simulations.

We are working on improving Belle II background measurements and pre-²⁵ dictions and closely collaborating with other accelerator laboratories around the globe on optimizing SuperKEKB in order to reach the target luminosity.

3.5 Radiation monitoring and beam abort system

Editor: *L.Vitale*

3.5.1 Introduction

- ³⁰ In this section we discuss the potential upgrades of the radiation monitoring and beam abort system around the interaction region. We first describe the present system, based on 28 single crystal CVD diamond sensors and its custom readout electronics and briefly recall its excellent performance. We underline the lessons learned from the first five years of operations and notable features to be
- ³⁵ preserved in future, in view of possible medium and long term upgrade. Then we critically review its main limitations and possible improvements. Finally we discuss the specifications and technical solutions for an upgraded electronics and for the sensors. The present beam abort system has been also complemented in 2021 by the CLAW scintillator system. This system cannot provide a steady ⁴⁰ monitoring and recording of the dose rate, but it can detect with a very good
	- 47

time resolution sudden beam losses. It was thus optimized using the diamond data to provide a faster beam abort signal. Its possible upgrade will also be mentioned in the sensors part.

3.5.2 The present system and features to be preserved

⁵ The present Belle II radiation monitoring and beam abort system is based on single-crystal diamond sensors, grown by chemical vapour deposition (sCVD sensors), and read-out by custom-designed electronics [\[55,](#page-161-7) [56\]](#page-161-8).

Diamond is known as an extremely radiation-resistant material since a very long time. Among the synthetic diamonds now available, the electronic grade ¹⁰ sCVD diamond is the one with the highest purity, presenting unique character-

istics that make it an exceptional material for radiation detectors, such as its efficiency, stability, rise time, temperature-independent response [\[57,](#page-161-9) [58\]](#page-161-10).

Our detectors are made of electronic grade sCVD sensors with a size $4.5 \times 4.5 \times$ 0.5 mm² and two (Ti + Pt + Au), $(100 + 120 + 250)$ nm electrodes, mounted on ¹⁵ a compact Rogers printed circuit board, providing both the mechanical support and the electrical screening, completed by a thin aluminium cover. The final package of the detectors has a size of $18.0 \times 12.0 \times 3.1$ mm².

For Phase 3 a total 28 radiation detectors were mounted in several key points of the vertex detector and of the beam pipe (BP). In particular 8 detectors were ²⁰ mounted around the cooling blocks of the BP to be as close as possible to the interaction point (IP) and at about the same radius of the PXD, 12 detectors on the SVD support cones, and the remaining 8 detectors on the BP bellows, close to the QCS magnets.

Two coaxial cables, one for the signal current and the other for the bias volt- 25 age, are routed for about 25 m to the diamond electronics system. The electronics consists of seven purpose-designed modules, Diamond Control Unit (DCU). Each DCU controls and reads out groups of four diamond detectors, moreover it provides the bias voltages individually to the four diamonds.

- The diamond currents are amplified by trans-impedance amplifiers, digitized ³⁰ by a 16-bit ADC and processed by FPGAs in the DCUs. Three amplifier gain values can be selected by resistors in the feedback loop of the front-end operational amplifier, to provide three different current measurement ranges, indexed as 0, 1, and 2 in the following, as shown in Table [3.5.](#page-48-0) The analogue bandwidth at the lowest gain (range 2) is about 10 MHz, matched to large and fast signals; it is
- ³⁵ reduced to the order of 10 kHz at the highest gain (range 0) used for monitoring smaller signals at 10 Hz. More than 10 orders of magnitude for signal currents can be covered in the three ranges, but the switching between ranges can be done by a slow control procedure that requires rather long times (order of few minutes).
- ⁴⁰ The electronics is located in the Electronic Hut, outside of the radiation controlled area of the Belle II detector, and accessible even during the collisions, in case of maintenance, replacements or even in case of a full upgrade of the system itself.

This system can provide a steady monitoring of the radiation dose during

Table 3.5: Selectable current-measurement ranges of diamond control units, with the corresponding rms noise values, measured in 100 kHz data (third column) and in 10 Hz data (fifth column). The typical corresponding ranges and rms noise values in dose-rate units can be obtained multiplying by the average calibration factor $k = 35$ (mrad/s)/nA. The effective dynamic ranges expressed in decibel at 100 kHz and 10 Hz are also shown in the fourth and sixth columns.

initial injection, collisions and continuous injections with a running efficiency close to 100%. In case of sudden beam losses the system can trigger a fast beam abort signal on a time scale shorter than the revolution time $(10 \mu s)$. Moreover the system records the dose rate with a 2.5 μ s granularity before the abort, for ⁵ post-abort analysis.

In Phase 3 run 1 (2019-2022), four of the eight detectors mounted on the beam pipe were dedicated for the abort function, with range 2 selected in the corresponding DCU; the remaining 24 diamond detectors were dedicated to monitoring, and the corresponding DCUs preset on the most sensitive current ¹⁰ measurement range 0. Occasionally four of the eight QCS bellows diamonds were used for injection and beam abort studies and their corresponding DCU set

to range 1 or 2 respectively.

In this way this system provides a substantial protection not only for the vertex detector, but for the full Belle II detector and also for some accelerator ¹⁵ components. The experience of the first years of running for SKB and Belle II showed that sudden beam losses can for instance damage vertex PXD detector parts and collimator jaws. They can also quench the super-conducting magnets of the QCS. An early and efficient beam abort helps to prevent or at least reduce impact and the risk for such potentially catastrophic occurrences [\[56\]](#page-161-8).

²⁰ The compact size of this detectors and their radiation hardness at least up to integrated doses of the order of $0.1 - 0.2$ MG_V are well-suited for radiation monitoring in the interaction region both for the present Belle II detector and for its future upgrades; moreover their temperature-independent response allows operation without additional temperature monitoring and related corrections, ²⁵ as for example needed for silicon diodes.

In summary the notable features of the present system to be preserved also for future upgrades are:

- Fast beam abort cycle of the order of 2.5 μ s or better.
- Recording of pre-abort dose rates with same time resolution.
- ³⁰ Large dynamic range of dose rate measurement over at least 10 orders of magnitude (now limited by the slow switch among the three available ranges).
- Flexibility, several configurable options, separate thresholds for beam abort and masking for each channel.
- Performance of the sensors in terms of stability, fast response and linearity over a wide range of stationary and transient radiation.
- ⁵ Radiation hardness of the diamond sensors to the future integrated doses with large margins.
	- Overall reliability of the full system.

3.5.3 Limitations and possible improvements

As underlined in the previous section, the present system performed very well, ¹⁰ and for many aspects even better than in the original specifications [\[55\]](#page-161-7). However some limitations have also emerged, mainly in the read-out system.

a) Dynamic range:

The DCU dynamic range (Table [3.5\)](#page-48-0) is not sufficient to accommodate all needs. In particular: (a) accelerator tuning needs measurements of dose-15 rates down to the order of 1 mrad/s, with a 10% precision of about 0.1 mrad/s, corresponding on average to about 3 pA; (b) beam losses correlated with aborts can reach or exceed $10 - 100$ krad/s, corresponding to currents of the order of several milli-ampere; (c) in continuous injection mode, the beam-losses peak during short time intervals at values exceeding the av-²⁰ erage losses by more than two orders of magnitude. The separation of the functions of 24 detectors (6 DCUs) dedicated to monitoring smaller currents in range 0, and four detectors (one DCU) dedicated to generate beam aborts on large signals in range 2, is a compromise solution, working only to some extent; in particular, injection spikes still saturate range 0. A ²⁵ wider dynamic range would be desirable.

b) Common mode noise spikes:

The noise quoted in Table [3.5](#page-48-0) does not take into account some high-frequency common-mode noise, not completely filtered out by averaging the 50 MHz ADC data at 10 Hz. The origin of this effect has been studied; its mitigation ³⁰ has been discussed here [\[59\]](#page-162-0).

c) Memory read:

The reading of the DCU internal buffer memory, containing the 400 kHz data, is designed as a memory dump after the arrival of an abort signal from SuperKEKB. The abort "freezes" the memory by stopping the increase ³⁵ of the memory pointer, and allows the subsequent read-out of the appropriate memory section by EPICS. This mechanism is too rigid and has some drawbacks. During the readout time interval the abort function (computation of moving sums and comparison with abort thresholds) is suspended: memory read and abort are incompatible. This is not a problem after si-⁴⁰ multaneous aborts of both beams, as those generated now by the diamondbased system. However it makes it impossible, for VXD detector safety reasons, to read the memory after a single-beam abort or during normal operations with circulating beams, while periodically obtaining the information of dose-rates from diamond detectors with full 2.5 μ s time resolution might be relevant (for instance to study the injection losses with such time resolution, or during background studies).

d) Synchronization:

The synchronization with SuperKEKB is limited to the exchange of abort ⁵ signals: abort requests from DCUs to SuperKEKB and the abort confirmation timing signals from SuperKEKB. A rough alignment of 400 kHz data recorded by the DCUs with SuperKEKB data and events is only possible through the SuperKEKB abort timing signal. A tighter synchronization using an accelerator clock and some sort of time stamps from SuperKEKB ¹⁰ had been considered as possible part of the initial specifications, but was abandoned due to lack of feedback from SuperKEKB and for the sake of simplicity. For the future, at least an additional timing signal from SuperKEKB injection should be considered. In this case, a precision of the order of 100 ns should be sufficient.

¹⁵ e) Injection-related dose rates:

As mentioned previously, injection-related dose-rate peaks are clearly visible in the 400 kHz data, read out after aborts or for some special studies of range 0 saturation effects. The time resolution of 2.5 μ s is largely sufficient to observe the beam-loss increase and oscillation patterns following ²⁰ injection, studied by CLAWS in Phase 1 [\[60\]](#page-162-1). Upgraded electronics should be able both to avoid saturation and to integrate the radiation dose due to injection separately, using SuperKEKB injection timing signals as time reference, for proper monitoring of injection quality.

f) HV control:

²⁵ The high voltage (HV) modules included in the DCUs are quite stable and reliable. However an internal reading of the output HV value is not available at present; a manual measurement of the voltage at the output connector is needed to cross-check the voltage setting. In one occasion, an EPICS software bug resulted in a wrong HV setting for a substantial period

³⁰ of time, during which diamond detector signals were reduced by about a factor two. Recorded data could be corrected for this effect afterwards, but clearly a better protection against such accidents is needed.

g) External logics:

The type conversion and distribution of SuperKEKB abort signals to DCUs ³⁵ and the fan-out of DCU abort requests to SuperKEKB, CLAWS and PXD are performed by NIM modules hosted in a NIM crate. This solution is simple, flexible and reliable, but the availability of spares for the NIM crate and modules might be questioned in the long term.

3.5.4 Specifications for the new electronics

⁴⁰ To avoid confusion deriving from different calibration factors for the diamond detectors, we will use current units everywhere, keeping in mind the average conversion factor 35 (mrad/s)/nA to dose rate units, and the relative variation of individual factors of up to $\pm 50\%$ with respect to the average.

The new electronics for the readout and control of diamond detectors will

Table 3.6: Summary of dynamic range parameters, assuming an average current to dose-rate conversion factor $k = 35$ (mrad/s)/nA. Explanations are given in the text.

have the same functions as the DCUs, in particular: (1) individual HV control for the diamond detectors; (2) amplification and digitization of current (dose-rate) signals; (3) integration and recording of charge (dose) samples in a ring buffer memory at 400 kHz; (4) computation of moving sums of programmable num-⁵ bers for the samples recorded in memory; (5) comparison with abort thresholds to generate logical signals; (6) generation of abort requests, using programmable logical combinations of these logical signals, and programmable masks; (7) readout of ring buffer memory; (8) computation of 10 Hz monitoring data from sums of samples recorded in memory, and their read-out; (9) initialization of parame-

¹⁰ ters such as abort thresholds etc.

The DCU limitations listed in the previous sections will be overcome by complying with the requirements listed here; the corresponding numbers are summarized in Table [3.6.](#page-51-0)

The crucial reliability of this system requires the introduction of self-test fea-¹⁵ tures in the electronics, generating a SuperKEKB interlock (beam abort request) if faults are detected.

The present method of generating two beam abort request signals for HER and LER (computation of moving sums from 400 kHz data, comparison with abort thresholds, channel masking and combinatorial logics) has proven to be ²⁰ adequate and does not need to be changed or upgraded. The operating experience shows that the useful time intervals for the computation of the moving sums do not exceed about 1 ms, corresponding to 400 buffer memory locations at 400 kHz. The main possible modification concerns the limited dynamic range, which does not allow the use of each individual diamond detector for both mon-

²⁵ itoring (smaller signals) and beam abort (higher signals), as explained below.

a) Dynamic range:

The total dynamic range required to accept the input current signals exceeds about 180 dB, that is more than nine decades: from a minimum of

about 3 pA, set by rms noise and requested precision on small signals, to about 5 mA, which should be measurable in the 10 Hz data. Present measurements of beam-loss spikes corresponding to injection, extrapolated to future injection conditions, indicate that a lower dynamic range of about ⁵ 136 dB would be needed to cover currents from the minimum set by noise up to the about 20 μ A (0.7 krad/s) of projected injection peaks. To keep the present flexibility for abort thresholds settings, a dynamic range of at least 88 dB is needed in the 400 kHz data: from about 0.2 μ A up to 5 mA. These numbers are summarized in Table [3.6.](#page-51-0)

10 b) Bandwidth and noise rejection:

The accepted signal bandwidth should be of the order of 1 MHz to match the 400 kHz data sampling in the ring buffer memory and the radiation dose integration requirements. A reduction in common-mode noise pickup might be obtained by an optimization of cabling and of the grounding 15 scheme. Moreover the introduction of bi-polar ranges in the sampling of the analogue currents should be considered since in the present system, the choice of uni-polar ranges increased the noise, due to the lack cancellation symmetric noise in the averaging of the over-sampled currents.

c) Memory read:

²⁰ The internal ring buffer memory should store data at 400 kHz, and have a depth corresponding to at least 600 ms (the present one has a depth corresponding to 85 s). It must be readable at any time, without interruption of the computation of the moving sums and the generation of abort signals. This may be obtained by writing the 400 kHz in two separate memories, ²⁵ one of which must be reserved for the beam abort function. The other memory can then be read out at any time, in particular: (a) after a beam abort the reading is triggered by the SuperKEKB abort timing confirmation; (b) for injection background studies, the reading must be triggered by the SuperKEKB injection timing signal (to be added as an input); (c) for ³⁰ other purposes, an operator should be allowed to initiate the reading of a memory section any time.

d) Synchronization:

At present only a rough synchronization with SuperKEKB is obtained by the SuperKEKB abort timing confirmation signal. At least another synchro-³⁵ nization signal must be available as input, the SuperKEKB injection timing. This signal initiates an adjustable veto in the Belle II trigger system; the information on the veto width must also be available as a hardware signal or via programming of slow controls. It should be clarified if a deeper integration with the SuperKEKB control system is needed and possible, in ⁴⁰ particular if the accelerator clock should be used and if some time-stamp mechanism could be used to identify local events in the SuperKEKB context.

e) Injection monitoring:

The numerical integration of digitized charge (dose) data by the FPGA ⁴⁵ firmware should take advantage of the improved synchronization including injection timing. In particular, the doses in the injection veto time intervals and in the complementary time intervals should be separately available.

f) HV control:

At present, all diamond detectors are biased at the same HV value: 100 V. In principle, the requirements of separate HV adjustment for each detector ⁵ might be relaxed. However, an important feature must be added: the possibility of reading back the bias voltage value without manually measuring it at the output HV connector.

g) External logics

The new system design should minimize the amount of external logics ¹⁰ needed to interface the system with SuperKEKB and should avoid the use of NIM crates and modules, which may pose problems for long-term avail-

ability.

3.5.5 Technical solutions

The basic building blocks of an upgraded system will be similar to those of the ¹⁵ existing electronics, described in [\[56,](#page-161-8) [59\]](#page-162-0) (a) a digital core based on a FPGA complemented by external memory; (b) an analog front-end with amplifiers and analog-to-digital conversion; (c) HV modules; (d) communication interface for commands exchange, parameters initialization, and for readout of 10 Hz and 400 kHz data.

²⁰ A preliminary technical choice concerns the modularity and form factor of the system.

An approach based on some standard crate with power supply, hosting modules that exchange signals via a back-plane, has some advantages. In particular, it may allow the use of existing modules restricting the new design to some cus-

- ²⁵ tom part. External cabling is minimized in this approach. It is also well suited to large systems with many channels, where the management of repairs and spare modules may be simplified. However, the overhead of crate infrastructure for test stations may significantly increase the cost for systems with a limited number of channels.
- ³⁰ The approach of the present system may be advantageous for a relatively small number of readout channels: the self-contained DCUs, each dealing with four detectors, include all the components (power supply, FPGA board, analog front-end, HV modules, communications board). It is easy to set up a standalone bench for tests and maintenance; the drawback in this case is the need ³⁵ of some external cabling and interfacing to exchange signals among DCUs and

between SuperKEKB and DCUs.

The major challenge in the upgrade project is undoubtedly the re-design of the analog front-end with a wider dynamic range, so R&D is primarily required to investigate a viable solution. Some preliminary R&D work showed that the

⁴⁰ required dynamic range can be achieved by the simultaneous introduction of a fourth range and a controlled system of fast switching devices that commute from one range to the other in about 1 μ s taking into account also noise introduced by the commutation itself. What seems still difficult to achieve is an overall fast commutation in the lower current ranges due to their slow rise-time

for a sudden increase of current (intrinsic bandwidth limitation for the required accuracy of the lower ranges). A workaround must be found to overcome this limitation. Also the digital part would need some preliminary R&D, in particular the management of two memories by the FPGA, to fulfil the requirement of ⁵ compatibility between memory-read and beam-abort.

A continuation of the collaboration with Elettra, initiated with the development and construction of DCUs, has been established in 2022 mainly because this could speed up the R&D and design phase, since some parts of the present design could be re-used.

¹⁰ **3.5.6 Radiation sensors**

Radiation detectors made with electron grade single crystal CVD diamond sensors have proven to be very good solution for the current systems both for the radiation monitoring and for the beam abort functionalities. This solution seems to be adequate for the upgrade. Moreover the present detectors can be used for

¹⁵ a short and medium term upgrade or even be re-used for a longer term one depending on the actual integrated dose up to the upgrade time and the expected dose for the new usage. The present irradiation studies show no damage up to 0.1 MGy, at least with electrons and photons.

However more studies could be useful such as:

- ²⁰ radiation hardness studies above 0.1 MGy with different radiation sources, since large beam losses can occur any time on some spots.
	- calibration with steady radiation over several order of magnitudes
	- short and intense pulses to study the response of sensor in such transients where large saturation effects may occur.
- ²⁵ Their main drawback are the costs, the few available providers for the sensors and the metallization, and the long calibration procedure.

If more detector would be needed for instrument other Belle II sub-detectors, the QCS or accelerator other options should be considered such as SiC or other radiation hard materials.

³⁰ For the beam abort only functionality, the CLAW scintillator system has proven to be very effective.

Chapter 4

Physics Performance

Editor: *A.Gaz*

4.1 Physics performance motivations

- ⁵ The physics case of Belle II is extensively presented in Refs. [\[5\]](#page-157-2) and [\[61\]](#page-162-2). It covers a large number of precision measurements on observables of B- and Dmeson and τ -lepton decays that are related to fundamental parameters of the standard model and could be sensitive to the existence of particles and couplings not envisioned by the theory. Another part of the physics program consists of
- ¹⁰ searches for exotic multiquark states that challenge the traditional QCD models and of fundamentally new particles that are connected to a dark sector extension of the standard model.

In order to fully complete this ambitious project and to probe new areas of research that might become interesting in the near future, Belle II must ensure ¹⁵ that the detector performance matches or exceeds the expectations drawn at the start of the experiment.

Unfortunately, the machine related background levels proved to be significantly more severe than expected in the first years of data taking, so the focus of this section will be mostly on the ways to ensure that the main physics goals of ²⁰ the experiment will be achieved despite the harsher than anticipated data taking conditions.

From the point of view of the tracking of charged particles (see e.g. Ref. [\[62\]](#page-162-3) for an overview of the current implementation and performance), the CDC is the sub-detector that has exhibited the highest sensitivity to machine related

- ²⁵ background during the first years of data taking. The most evident effect has been a loss of reconstruction efficiency for the tracks that primarily rely on the CDC (most notably the pions originating from the K^0_s that decay beyond the fourth layer of the VXD) due to the large increase in chamber current during and just after injection, resulting in a voltage drop of the HV resistor and space
- 30 charge effects. Other detrimental issues have been a degradation of the dE/dx measurement accuracy and loss of trigger efficiency.

We do not plan any modification of the CDC hardware in the near future (while technically feasible, the replacement of the innermost layers of the chamber is very risky and will not be further considered), so the interventions to keep the tracking efficiency high must be concentrated on:

- a) upgrades in the readout electronics (see Sec. [5.2\)](#page-97-0);
- b) developments for the tracking software. As of now, we are considering ⁵ some ideas, such as *inverting* the tracking chain (so that we start from the silicon tracker and extrapolate outward to the CDC), *filtering* the CDC hits with small electronic signal (and possibly add them back to the reconstructed track, to improve the dE/dx measurement), and activating a *local CDC finder*, to recover the reconstruction efficiency for very displaced ¹⁰ tracks. These ideas are not mutually exclusive and will be tested in the near future.

It will be critical in any case to monitor the background conditions and make sure that thresholds motivated by physics performance are not exceeded for long periods of time.

Figure 4.1: Occupancies (colored bars) of the current and planned tracking devices as a function of the level of beam background and corresponding tracking efficiencies (colored markers) for the SVD+CDC, VTX+CDC and CDC-only detector configuration. It is possible to see that the VTX can almost completely compensate the dramatic loss of efficiency of the CDC-only case (which the current SVD can only partially mitigate).

- ¹⁵ Tracking efficiency, particularly for low momentum tracks, can be improved with a new silicon vertex detector with finer granularity both in space and in time. This new concept would ensure higher efficiency at low momentum, better impact parameter resolution, and more importantly more robustness against machine backgrounds. Given the limitations set by the CDC, the interplay be-²⁰ tween the gas chamber and the silicon tracking device will be of paramount
- importance to maintain the tracking efficiency (at least for the charged particles that do not originate far from the interaction region), as shown in Fig. [4.1.](#page-56-0) Advanced stage designs for such a sub-detector already exist, see e.g. Sec. [5.1.3,](#page-86-0)

and the replacement of the currently installed VXD detector will be one of the priorities of the next stage of the Belle II upgrade, especially if restrictions in the detector envelope will be required by the upgrades in the accelerator. Improvements in the vertexing capabilities do not only mean better precision on time

- 5 dependent analyses of B and D mesons, but provide also handles for discriminating among different decay topologies. Moreover, the parameters at the point of closest approach of the tracks in the rest of the event enter the most refined flavor tagging algorithms, giving significant contributions to their performance, see e.g. Ref. [\[63\]](#page-162-4).
- ¹⁰ For the Particle IDentification (PID), no major hardware improvements are foreseen for the ARICH and TOP, if we exclude regular maintenance and possible replacement of photo-detectors. Also in this area the CDC is the most vulnerable sub-detector as in high background conditions the measurement of the specific energy loss (dE/dx) is affected by a bias that has a dependence on the time that
- ¹⁵ elapsed since the last e^+/e^- bunch injection into the main ring. This effect can be partially corrected with a dedicated procedure (currently under test) aimed at determining calibration constants that depend on the time since the last injection. Further improvements in the PID performance will be achieved thanks to a more pervasive use of machine learning techniques applied to the reconstruction ²⁰ software.

For the reconstruction of the neutral particles, we do not plan any significant hardware modifications of the ECL, while we are considering an upgrade of the KLM sub-detector, replacing the resistive plate chambers in the barrel section with scintillators, adding also *time of flight* capabilities in the readout, so

- 25 that a (10 20%) measurement of the momentum of the neutral particles detected in the KLM can be achieved. While there are no serious concerns about the muon reconstruction efficiency and the performance stability of the current detector, the upgraded version of the KLM could achieve better K^0_L reconstruction efficiency. This would be very relevant not only to increase the signal yield
- $_3$ of modes with K_L^0 's in the final state (most notably the eigenstates studied in time dependent CP violation analyses, such as $J/\psi K_L^0$, $\eta' K_L^0$, etc.), but also to improve the K^0_L veto capabilities for analyses with neutrinos or other particles escaping detection in the final state (an undetected K_{L}^{0} would behave like a neutrino, and thus increasing the K^0_L veto efficiencies would translate in a reduction 35 of the physics background). Examples of modes that would benefit from this
- include the Belle II flagship analyses $B \to K^{(*)} \nu \bar{\nu}$, $B \to D^{(*)} \ell \nu$, $B \to \tau \nu$, and inclusive $|V_{ub}|$ measurements.

In Sec. [4.2](#page-58-0) we will discuss the expected improvements to key physics performance parameters that we foresee from some of the upgrade scenarios that are currently under consideration.

One of the areas in which Belle II needs to quickly find strategies to improve performance is that of trigger. With the current background conditions and luminosity scenarios, the experiment might find itself in the difficult position of having to sacrifice bandwidth for important physics channels, first of all those char-

⁴⁵ acterized by low-multiplicity final states (very few tracks/photons with possibly missing energy/momentum and/or displaced vertices). Under extreme back-

ground conditions even some low charged-multiplicity $B\overline{B}$ events (e.g. those in which one B^0 decays to $\pi^0\pi^0$) will suffer from reduced trigger efficiency. Shortterm measures will allow us to survive for a while longer, but for the long term we must radically change our approach. In Sec. [4.3](#page-67-0) we present examples of rad-⁵ ically new approaches, in which machine learning is expected to play a decisive role.

In Sec. [4.4](#page-69-0) we will conclude this chapter presenting the improvements in the performance that we expect in some key areas of our Physics program.

4.2 Key detector performance parameters for dif-¹⁰ **ferent options**

For the VTX upgrade, we study the performance of the upgrade geometries, and compare them to that of the current Belle II detector, utilizing a full Geant4 simulation of the detector in the study of specific decay modes of interest. This approach, coupled with the state-of-the-art predictions of machine backgrounds ¹⁵ presented in Chapter [3.1,](#page-33-0) ensures that all the effects and correlations are properly taken into account (with the exception of possible correlated losses due to

the unsimulated injection background).

We investigate two different VTX geometries, which differ only in the location of the third layer. The *nominal* geometry has the third layer placed at a distance ²⁰ of 3.9 cm from the interaction point (IP), and is expected to maximize the track

- impact parameter resolution, while in the *alternative* geometry, the third layer is displaced at 6.9 cm from the IP, in order to improve the K^0_s reconstruction efficiency. The results are presented in Sec. [4.2.1](#page-58-1)[-4.2.4.](#page-62-0)
- For the KLM upgrade scenario, we do not have yet a full Geant4 geometry ²⁵ implemented in the Belle II software framework, thus we will limit ourselves to some qualitative statements in Sec. [4.2.5.](#page-65-0)

4.2.1 Low momentum tracking efficiency and impact parameter resolution

One of the areas in which we see a striking improvement of the VTX upgrade ³⁰ scenarios over the nominal Belle II detector is the tracking of low-momentum particles, most notably the *soft pions* from the decays of D∗± mesons.

We study the low momentum tracking efficiency by reconstructing the decay chain $B^0 \to D^{*-}\ell^+\nu$, with $D^{*-} \to \overline{D}^0 \pi^-_{\text{soft}}$ and $\overline{D}^0 \to K^+\pi^-$ or $K^+\pi^-\pi^+\pi^-$. We report here the results only for the $\overline{D}^0 \to K^+ \pi^-$ decay mode, the performance 35 with $\overline{D}^0 \to K^+ \pi^- \pi^+ \pi^-$ is perfectly consistent.

Table [4.1](#page-59-0) shows the yields for correctly reconstructed signal and self-crossfeed (i.e. signal events in which some of the particles assigned to the signal candidate are actually decay products of the other B meson in the event) after the application of minimal analysis cuts on the quality of the reconstructed tracks, masses

⁴⁰ of the resonances involved, and overall vertex probability of the reconstructed chain. The nominal Belle II geometry with intermediate v2 beam backgrounds

Table 4.1: Summary of the reconstruction efficiency and purity for the $B^0 \rightarrow$ $D^{*-}\ell^+\nu$ decay chain, with $D^{*-}\to \overline{D}^0\pi^-_{\text{soft}}$ and $\overline{D}^0\to K^+\pi^-$, for the nominal Belle II geometry with the intermediate v2 background scenario and the nominal VTX configuration in all three background scenarios.

	Belle II $(v2)$	VTX (v1)	VTX (v2)	VTX (v3)
Generated events	32533	32559	32559	30255
Correctly reconstructed signal	10059	16913	16848	15583
Self-crossfeed	28495	51375	51826	47527
Efficiency	30.9%	51.9%	51.7%	51.5%
Purity	26.1%	24.8%	24.5%	24.7%

scenarios is compared to the nominal VTX configuration (the one with Layer3 closest to the beam line) in all three background hypotheses.

We see a remarkable improvement (of almost a factor 1.7) in the reconstruction efficiency for the VTX geometry over nominal Belle II, with comparable pu-⁵ rity (defined as the ratio between the number of correctly reconstructed signal events and the total number of candidates). It is also apparent that the perfor-

mance is very stable against the increasing background conditions.

The much better reconstruction efficiency is mostly due to the enhanced tracking efficiency for the π_{soft}^- candidates, as can be seen in Fig. [4.2,](#page-60-0) where we 10 see a dramatic improvement for transverse momenta below $0.05 \text{ GeV}/c$ and only for $p_T \geq 0.2 \text{ GeV}/c$ we see the reconstruction efficiency of the nominal Belle II detector approach that of the VTX upgrade scenario.

The improvement in the tracking quality of the soft pions can also be seen from Fig[.4.3,](#page-60-1) where we compare the width of the distributions of the residuals of

¹⁵ d_0 , the signed distance from the *z* axis of the Point Of Closest Approach (POCA), and z_0 , the z-coordinate of the POCA. The VTX geometry improves by a factor of up to \sim 4 over the nominal Belle II and does not show any significant sensitivity to the background conditions.

4.2.2 Momentum resolution

- 20 For tracks with transverse momentum greater than $\sim 0.3 \text{ GeV}/c$, the momentum resolution is dominated by the CDC, so it is not surprising that no appreciable improvement in the track momentum resolution is observed for the daughter leptons of the J/ψ in the above mentioned sample.
- A moderate improvement (a few %) is seen for the momentum resolution of $_{25}$ the K^0_S candidates, for the VTX upgrade scenarios, mostly due to the improved vertexing capabilities.

Figure 4.2: Reconstruction efficiency of $B^0 \to D^{*-}\ell^+\nu$ as a function of the transverse momentum of the $\pi_{\rm soft}^-$ from the $D^{*-} \to \overline{D}^0 \pi_{\rm soft}^-$ decay (left plot) and cosine of the polar angle of the π_{soft}^- track (right). We compare the performance of the nominal Belle II detector (black dots) with medium v2 background and the nominal VTX configuration in the optimistic v1 background scenario (green squares), medium v2 (blue upward pointing triangles), and pessimistic v3 (red downward pointing triangles). The shaded blue histograms display the momentum spectrum of the π_{soft}^- . The bottom plots show the ratio between nominal Belle II and nominal VTX in the medium v2 background scenario.

Figure 4.3: Width (σ_{68}) of the distribution of the residuals of d_0 (left plot) and z_0 (right) as a function of the π_{soft}^- momentum. We compare the performance of the nominal Belle II detector (black dots) with medium v2 background and the nominal VTX configuration in the optimistic v1 background scenario (green squares), medium v2 (blue upward pointing triangles), and pessimistic v3 (red downward pointing triangles). The shaded blue histograms display the momentum spectrum of the π_{soft}^- . The bottom plots show the ratio between nominal Belle II and nominal VTX in the medium v2 background scenario.

4.2.3 Vertexing resolution

We study the vertexing performance of the upgrade scenarios by analyzing samples of one million $B^0 \rightarrow J/\psi K^0_S$ events generated and reconstructed with all the possible combinations of detector geometries and background scenarios.

5 Figure [4.4](#page-61-0) shows the distribution of the decay vertex resolution $\sigma_z = \sigma(z_{\text{meas}}$ z_{true}) (the width of the distribution obtained by taking the difference between the measured and the true positions) along the z axis of the signal B decay for the three detector configurations in the intermediate background scenario and for the nominal VTX geometry in the three background scenarios. The results are ¹⁰ summarized also in Table [4.2](#page-62-1) and show that the upgraded geometries achieve a \sim 35% better resolution on the B decay vertex and, contrary to the nominal Belle II detector, they do not show any significant degradation as a function of the background conditions.

Figure 4.4: Left figure: comparison of the B decay vertex resolution along the z axis in $B^0 \to J/\psi K^0_s$ events for the nominal Belle II detector (solid line), nominal VTX geometry (dotted line) and alternative VTX geometry (filled grey histogram). The bottom plot shows the ratio between the VTX geometries (empty squares for the nominal and filled triangles for the alternative) and nominal Belle II. Right figure: B decay vertex resolution along the z axis for the nominal VTX geometry in the three background scenarios: optimistic v1 scenario (green solid line), intermediate v2 scenario (blue dotted line), and pessimistic v3 scenario (red filled histogram). The bottom plot shows the ratio between the two higher background scenarios and the optimistic one.

Similar results (not shown) are obtained for the vertexing resolution along 15 the x and y directions: the VTX upgrade guarantees significantly better performance and is almost insensitive to the levels of machine background.

Analogous studies for the $K^0_{\scriptscriptstyle{S}}$ decay vertex resolution are displayed in Fig. [4.5.](#page-63-0)

B_{sia} z vertex resolution (μ m)		Bkg $(v1)$ Bkg $(v2)$ Bkg $(v3)$	
Belle II	21.9	23.0	24.9
Nominal VTX	14.5	14.4	14.1
Alternative VTX	14.4	14.3	14.0

Table 4.2: Signal B vertex resolution along the z axis (in μ m) for the three detector geometries and three background scenarios investigated.

Also in this case, the upgraded geometries show a better vertexing resolution compared to the nominal Belle II detector and do not appear to suffer any degradation in performance due to the increasing machine background. The apparent improvement of the vertexing resolution with the harsher background scenarios ⁵ that is visible in the right plot of Fig. [4.5](#page-63-0) is a spurious effect that is due to the loss of reconstruction efficiency for candidates with large flight distance (that are thus affected by poorer vertex resolution) in the higher background scenarios.

4.2.4 K^0_s reconstruction efficiency

We study the K^0_s reconstruction efficiency using the $B^0\rightarrow J/\psi K^0_s$ samples de-10 fined above. Figure [4.6](#page-64-0) shows the distributions of the measured flight length, projected on the (x, y) plane, of the K^0_s candidates reconstructed with the three different detector configurations under study. We only consider candidates that are matched with the generated K^0_s particles.

Standalone VXD/VTX tracks require at least 2.5 3-dimensional hits (a hit on ¹⁵ each side of a double-sided sensor counts as 0.5) in the detector: due to this requirement the efficiency rapidly falls as a function of the transverse flight distance. The nominal VTX geometry has a more pronounced falloff (compared to the others) in correspondence of the position of the third layer. For the alternative geometry, a similar feature appears a few cm further from the z axis of the

²⁰ detector (and thus the overall impact on the efficiency is smaller). Beyond ~ 10 cm, the K_S^0 reconstruction is dominated by the CDC, so no significant differences between the geometries can be seen.

Table [4.3](#page-65-1) summarizes the reconstructed yields in all the investigated configurations. Besides some common selection criteria on the properties of the B and

 $_{25}$ $\,$ J/ψ candidates, we require that the three-dimensional flight length of the K^0_S candites be greater than 1 cm: this is applied to reduce the contribution from random combinations of tracks giving an invariant mass similar to that of the $K^0_{\rm s}.$ Furthermore, in order to make the comparison more meaningful, we require that the projection of the flight length on the (x, y) plane be less than 14 cm, so that $_{{\rm 30}}$ the decay vertex of the K^0_S candidate is within the volume of the silicon vertex

The nominal Belle II configuration shows the best performance in terms of overall reconstruction efficiency and also in terms of resilience to the increasing background conditions. The alternative VTX geometry, having one less

detector.

Figure 4.5: Left figure: comparison of the K^0_s decay vertex resolution along the z axis in $B^0 \to J/\psi K^0_s$ events for the nominal Belle II detector (solid line), nominal VTX geometry (dotted line) and alternative VTX geometry (filled grey histogram). The bottom plot shows the ratio between the VTX geometries (empty squares for the nominal and filled triangles for the alternative) and nominal Belle II. Right figure: K^0_s decay vertex resolution along the z axis for the nominal VTX geometry in the three background scenarios: optimistic v1 scenario (green solid line), intermediate v2 scenario (blue dotted line), and pessimistic v3 scenario (red filled histogram). The bottom plot shows the ratio between the two higher background scenarios and the optimistic one.

Figure 4.6: Distributions of the flight length, projected on the (x, y) plane, of K^0_S candidates from $B^0 \to J/\psi K^0_S$ events reconstructed with the nominal Belle II detector (solid line), nominal VTX geometry (dotted line) and alternative VTX geometry (filled grey histogram). The bottom panel shows the ratio between the nominal (empty squares) or alternative (black triangles) VTX geometry and the nominal Belle II configuration. The intermediate (v2) background hypothesis has been utilized for these plots.

layer compared to the current VXD detector, shows only slightly worse resilience against beam background and exhibits a \sim 5% lower reconstruction efficiency. Significantly worse results are obtained with the nominal VTX geometry, especially in the higher background scenarios.

Table 4.3: Number of reconstructed K^0_s candidates for the three detector geometries and background scenarios that we are considering. For each of the nine configurations, we report the yield obtained by requiring that the threedimensional flight length be greater than 1 cm (this is typically done to reduce the combinatorics) and by requiring in addition that the flight length in the transverse plane be less than 14 cm (to restrict to the candidates that decay within the volume of the silicon vertex detector). The percentages in parentheses under the yields in the last two columns indicate the loss of efficiency of the intermediate (v2) and pessimistic (v3) background hypotheses compared to the optimistic (v1) scenario.

 $5\,4.2.5$ L ⁵ **reconstruction efficiency**

Neutral K particles enter many channels of the Belle II Physics program. Most channels containing one K^0 in the final state can be studied by reconstructing only $K^0 \to K^0_s \to \pi \pi$ candidates and then assuming that the same results hold true for $K^0 \to K^0_L$.

 10 Notable exceptions are the channels in which we have multiple K^0 's in the final state (where we cannot assume that e.g. $K_S^0 K_L^0 X$ behaves as $K_S^0 K_S^0 X$) and channels utilized in analyses of time-dependent CP violation, for example $B^0 \rightarrow J/\psi K^0,$ which are still limited by statistical power and thus the inclusion of

 K_{L}^{0} 's candidates, which typically account for $\sim 30\%$ of the total yield, improves the precision on the CP violation parameters. The intended KLM upgrade is expected to improve the reconstruction efficiency and will also allow for a measurement of the K^0_L momentum with a resolution of $\sim 13\%$ for the momentum

- 5 range relevant for CP violation measurements. Traditional B -factory analyses of final states containing K_{L}^{0} 's apply a kinematic constraint (for example imposing that the beam-constrained mass of the candidate coincides with the mass of the B meson, or that the difference between the measured and expected energy of the *B* candidate ΔE is null) to supply for the missing information on the K^0_L mo-
- ¹⁰ mentum. This kinematic constraint allows to obtain a narrow signal peak over a much broader background component. The additional constraint deriving from the direct measurement of the K_L^0 momentum will allow to better characterize the signal component and to significantly reduce the combinatorial backgrounds, but the final impact on the sensitivity to the CP violation parameter will likely 15 be small.

More promising results could be obtained in analyses in which K_{L}^{0} 's are produced as part of a background process that must be vetoed. These analyses typically target final states with one or more neutrinos in the final state, and are thus among the *golden channels* of the Belle II physics program. Events with $_{20}$ unreconstructed K_{L}^{0} 's (that would mimic the behavior of a neutrino) constitute one of the major sources of background in these studies.

Example analyses include the inclusive measurement of $|V_{ub}|$, in which decays originating from $b \to c \to K^0_L$ transitions must be kept under control. In Belle and BaBar analyses (see e.g. [\[64\]](#page-162-5) and [\[65\]](#page-162-6)) uncertainties related to the K^0_L reconstruction efficiency are among the leading sources of systematic errors. Another class of analyses that might benefit from increased $K^0_{\scriptscriptstyle L}$ veto capabilities is that of (semi)tauonic B decays, such as $B \to \tau \nu$ or $B \to D^{(*)} \tau \nu$. The Belle analysis [\[66\]](#page-162-7) explicitly applies a K^0_L veto, which results in a 7.3% uncertainty out

of 14.7% total systematics.

- 30 Also in the $B \to K^{(*)}\nu\nu$ and $D \to \pi\nu\nu$ analyses, the ability to veto K^0_L candidates is critical to control peaking background. In the recent $B^+ \to K^+\nu\bar{\nu}$ analysis [\[67\]](#page-162-8) from Belle II a sizable fraction of the backgrounds, for both the inclusivetag and the hadronic-tag approaches, contains K_{L}^{0} 's in the final state. Moreover, the $B^+ \to K^+ K^0_L K^0_L$ process, is very difficult to distinguish from the expected
- $_{35}$ standard model signal in case both K_{L}^{0} 's are unreconstructed. For all the analyses mentioned above, having an increased $K^0_{\scriptscriptstyle L}$ detection efficiency would not only reduce the background contamination, but it would allow also to gather higher-statistics and more reliable data control samples, further reducing our systematic errors.
- ⁴⁰ A higher KLM efficiency will also translate into more effective photon/neutron veto, which is currently a limiting factor for some dark sector searches, most notably the search for dark photons in the single photon final state, which is severely limited by the inadequate γ -veto capabilities of the current detector. Searches for specific dark photon final states with long-lived particles that can
- ⁴⁵ be detected in the KLM and whose momentum can be measured with time-offlight capabilities would also benefit from an upgraded detector.

At the moment we do not have a full simulation of the Belle II detector incorporating the upgraded KLM, thus we cannot provide quantitative statements on the expected improvement on the physics reach in the channels mentioned above.

⁵ **4.3 Trigger**

4.3.1 Machine learning

Editor: *T.Ferber*

The existing Belle II trigger system mostly relies on conventional reconstruction algorithms that utilize local information and rather simple algorithms to ¹⁰ fit the hardware constraints of currently used FPGAs. One notable exception is the NeuroZ track trigger at Belle II that uses conventionally constructed track segments as inputs for a simple fully-connected neural network to infer transverse momentum and z -impact parameter. With the advent of significantly more powerful FPGAs and more tools to simplify the translation of Python-level ML ¹⁵ solutions to FPGAs, more complicated network architectures and higher dimensional inputs are of interest for real-time applications.

Track reconstruction is a crucial part of the L1 trigger in the Belle II experiment. Track-finding algorithms are designed to balance the requirements of high efficiency in finding charged particles with good track parameter resolution, a

- ²⁰ low rate of spurious tracks, and reasonable demand of resources. We started development of a complete Graph Neural Network track finding and fitting algorithm. A graph representation of CDC detector hits, including the 2D position, timing information and pulse height, is used to find tracks and infer their track parameters. In order to identify the varying number of tracks per event, we use
- ²⁵ GNN-based object condensation for track finding. While in principle the inference of the algorithm aims at low latency single-step inference using for example GravNet layers, the large number of CDC-hits per event prevents the building of a single event-wide graph. Instead, we plan to first run a cleaning step using smaller GNNs that utilize local graphs in 2-3 sectors per superlayer on about 20
- ³⁰ individual UT4 FPGAs in parallel (see Fig. [4.7\)](#page-68-0). For simulated beam backgrounds for final luminosity conditions, we find that 99% of all generic $B\overline{B}$ events contain less than 300 hits per sector. These GNNs will classify hits into signal- and background-like and reject background-like hits based on locally built graphs using edge classifiers. This clean-up step will also be responsible to provide data
- ³⁵ that is rather robust against changes of beam background conditions for the final tracking step. The cleaned output is passed to a single large FPGA on which a global graph is built, which is then passed to a GNN with object condensation loss [\[68\]](#page-162-9) for track finding and parameter inference. We have demonstrated that real-time graph building on FPGAs is possible within the existing throughput and
- ⁴⁰ latency requirements of the Belle II experiment's hardware-based trigger system for the CDC [\[69\]](#page-162-10). First studies show that the large field-of-view of a global GNN provides superior performance for signatures with shallow track angles, tracks with low transverse momentum, overlapping tracks, and tracks originating from

displaced vertices [\[70\]](#page-162-11). A full implementation requires a co-design of graph building, cleanup GNN, and final track finding GNN to optimize efficiency and resolution metrics. The current trigger system does not provide pulse height information which proved powerful for background rejection. Conceptually, it is ⁵ also possible to include a vertexing step by changing the object condensation loss

targets.

Figure 4.7: Schematic representation of the Graph Neural Network based track finding and fitting algorithm.

ECL clustering is another area where GNNs can be used to exploit information from large fields of view. The main interests for possible improvements are better spatial resolution, separation of overlapping clusters, and low energy ¹⁰ cluster identification. The current ECL trigger algorithm is based on so-called trigger cells (TCs) that contain about 4x4 crystals, depending on their location. The energy of all TC crystals is combined into an analog sum and read out if it exceeds a threshold of 100 MeV. The actual clustering algorithm combines TCs into clusters but is not able to separate neighbouring TCs into separate clusters ¹⁵ or provide actual spatial reconstruction. For simulated beam backgrounds for final luminosity conditions, we find that 99% of all generic $B\overline{B}$ events contain less than 89 TCs. This number is small enough to directly feed it into a global GNN: a graph representation of ECL TCs, including the 2D position, timing information and energy, is used to find clusters and infer their energy and cluster centroid

- ²⁰ position. In order to identify the varying number of clusters per event, we use GNN-based object condensation. First studies show comparable efficiency and fake rate for photons with $E > 100$ MeV, but a better energy and position resolution [\[71\]](#page-163-0). The latter can be used to improve Bhabha-vetoes that rely on angular deviations from back-to-back topologies of ECL clusters. Using the full infor-
- ²⁵ mation of nearby energy depositions, we have shown that local GNNs are able to separate overlapping energy depositions [\[72\]](#page-163-1) that are a signature of axionlike particles (ALPs) or high energy neutral pions even in very high background

environments. In particular the ALPs a produced in $ee \rightarrow \gamma a (\rightarrow \gamma \gamma)$ are reconstructed as $ee \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ events for low mass ALPs and are prescaled on trigger level if the decay photons are not isolated. In addition to replacing the current clustering algorithm with a GNN approach, two hardware upgrades are promising

- ⁵ to provide a robust calorimeter trigger at high beam background levels: first, the readout threshold is limited by electronics noise that could be improved by dedicated redesign of the Shaper-DSP boards. The GNN performance generally improves for lower readout thresholds and shows an improved energy and position resolution. Second, the large size of 4-by-4 crystals in each TC limits the
- ¹⁰ position resolution and the capability to resolve overlapping clusters. We study a Shaper-DSP upgrade with reduced TC size of about 2-by-2 crystals with 25 MeV readout threshold. This increases the number of input nodes for the GNN but provides a handle to run neutral particle identification on trigger level exploiting shower shapes as additional object condensation loss targets.
- ¹⁵ The GNNs that show the best robustness against beam backgrounds for both tracking and clustering relied on learning a latent space representation, followed by a k -nearest neighbour algorithm to select graph nodes of interest. kNN implementations on FPGAs are currently not able to cope with the large number of input nodes and additional studies to either replace kNNs or to implement ²⁰ approximate kNNs on FPGAs are ongoing.

4.4 Physics benchmarks

In Section [4.2,](#page-58-0) we showed that the area in which we expect the biggest impact in physics performance is the improvement in reconstruction efficiency and quality for the π_{soft} produced in the decay of charged D^* mesons.

- ²⁵ This improvement will be very beneficial in at least two major areas of the Belle II physics program. In the first place, the $D^{*+} \to D^0 \pi_{\text{soft}}^+$ decay is the main process through which we reconstruct and determine the flavor $(D^0$ or \overline{D}^0) of the neutral D mesons that are utilized in measurements of the $D\overline{D}$ mixing and in searches for mixing-induced CP violation in the charm sector, which are still
- ³⁰ very much limited by the statistical uncertainties and for which Belle II will have unique sensitivity in decay modes containing one or more π^{0} 's. Secondly, the reconstruction of D^* candidates is of the utmost importance for B -physics channels exploiting the Full Event Interpretation (FEI) [\[73\]](#page-163-2). In these analyses, one of the two B mesons in the event is reconstructed through one of many hadronic
- 35 or semileptonic decay chains. Charged D^* mesons feature in about $\sim 50\%$ of the reconstructed B mesons in the tag side, thus an improvement in the π_{soft} reconstruction efficiency would immediately translate in an increased sensitivity for the channels that need FEI (most of which are still severely limited by statistical uncertainties). These analyses typically target final states containing one or ⁴⁰ more neutrinos and are in many cases among the *golden channels* of Belle II.
- Significant improvements over Belle II will be seen also on the vertexing precision. These will translate into better sensitivity to time dependent analyses in the B and charm sectors. As an example, we report the estimated sensitivity

to the time dependent CP asymmetry in the $B \to K_S^0 \pi^+ \pi^- \gamma$ channel, which is potentially sensitive to right-handed contributions from physics beyond the standard model.

Figure 4.8: Left figure: Δt resolution for $B^0\to K^0_S\pi^+\pi^-\gamma$ events for the nominal Belle II detector (solid line), nominal VTX geometry (dotted line) and alternative VTX geometry (filled grey histogram). The bottom plot shows the ratio between the VTX geometries (empty squares for the nominal and filled triangles for the alternative) and nominal Belle II. Right figure: Δt resolution for the nominal VTX geometry in the three background scenarios: optimistic v1 scenario (green solid line), intermediate v2 scenario (blue dotted line), and pessimistic v3 scenario (red filled histogram). The bottom plot shows the ratio between the two higher background scenarios and the optimistic one.

We estimate the sensitivity of the analysis by generating 1000 toy experi-⁵ ments for each combination of detector geometry and background scenario, assuming an integrated luminosity of 50 ab $^{-1}$. The critical observable for this class of analyses is the proper decay time difference between the two B mesons in the event: $\Delta t = t(B_{\text{sig}}) - t(B_{\text{tag}})$, where $t(B_{\text{sig}})$ is the decay time of the signal B candidate (the one decaying to $K_s^0 \pi^+ \pi^- \gamma$ in this case) and $t(B_{\text{tag}})$ is the decay 10 time of the other B meson produced in the event. The decay time difference Δt is determined from the spatial displacement along the boost direction of the two decay vertices. Fig. [4.8](#page-70-0) shows the Δt resolution obtained for the different vertex detector geometries and same intermediate (v2) background scenario (left plot) and the resolution for the nominal VTX geometry and different background lev-¹⁵ els (right plot). It is apparent that the performance of the VTX is significantly

superior to that of the current detector and shows little sensitivity to the background conditions.

The events in the toy experiments are generated with a smearing on the generated value of Δt determined by a fit to the distributions of the residuals for each configuration; the fitting function we utilize is the sum of three gaussians. The much better Δt resolution of the VTX configurations more than compensates the small loss of efficiency in the K^0_s reconstruction that we discussed in Sec. [4.2.4.](#page-62-0) The final expected uncertainty on the time-dependent CP violation

- 5 parameter S is 0.028 for the current Belle II detector, 0.023 for the nominal VTX geometry, and 0.025 for the alternative VTX. The differences between those results might seem unimpressive, but it is worth noting that the current Belle II detector would need a $\sim 40\%$ increase in the available integrated luminosity in order to match the result of the nominal VTX upgrade, i.e. the upgrade is
- 10 estimated to be worth the equivalent of 20 ab⁻¹ of data on the design luminosity.
Chapter 5

Inner Detector

Editor: *C.Marinas*

5.1 Vertex Detector

⁵ **5.1.1 VXD upgrade baseline**

While a number of scenarios are being considered as a part of the machine upgrade for achieving the intended final peak luminosity, several of these options result in modifying the spatial envelope of the interaction region. This step would require a complete overhaul of the Belle II innermost subdetectors.

- ¹⁰ Preparing for a vertex detector upgrade also in the scenario in which the interaction region is maintained has also strong strategic value, for example to replace the current VXD in case of a severe accident or to exploit the advantages of having a better performing inner detector system in certain physics channels.
- Among the various possibilities considered by the Belle II upgrade group, ¹⁵ the development of a CMOS-based successor to the PXD and SVD detectors has emerged as the most promising solution. The monolithic active pixel sensor CMOS technology has the potential for providing higher granularity, thinner, intelligent detectors at a lower overall cost. The monolithic CMOS option is supported as the baseline of the VXD upgrade proposal and is implemented through ²⁰ the development of the OBELIX sensor discussed in section [5.1.2.](#page-73-0)

This detector concept would improve the tracking robustness against large machine backgrounds and allow the detector envelope to be adapted to possible changes to the QCS systems. In addition, track reconstruction for low momentum particles and vertex position resolution are expected to improve. Other per-

²⁵ formance for physics should stay at the level of the present detector. Quantitative estimates obtained with baseline design described in this chapter are presented and discussed in section [4.2.](#page-58-0)

The studies presented here assume the new vertex detector would occupy the same volume of the current VXD (between 14 mm and 135 mm in radius),

³⁰ although the system is being designed flexibly to adapt to any possible modifications of the machine-detector boundaries. A good particle hit spatial resolution below 15 μ m is required, along with a low material budget below about 0.2% X_0 per layer for the inner radii and $0.8\%X_0$ per layer for the outer radii. To ensure good long term performance the reference hit rate and radiation levels used in the design of the system are the following values for the innermost layer:

- Hit rate capability: 120 MHz/cm^2
- ⁵ Total ionizing dose: 10 Mrad/year
	- NIEL fluence: $5 \times 10^{13} \text{ n}_{\text{eq}}/\text{cm}^2/\text{year}$

The current VTX baseline design consists of five detection layers, all equipped with the same monolithic sensor. Nevertheless, the design of the layers depends on the radius and two separate concepts have emerged. Layers below 30 mm ra-

¹⁰ dius are grouped into the so-called iVTX design, while layers at outer radii follow the oVTX configuration.

Section [5.1.2](#page-73-0) describes the main sensor option, which relies on the CMOS technology benefiting from a large expertise and support in the R&D community. The VTX structure, including ladder design and service concepts, is detailed in

¹⁵ section [5.1.3.](#page-86-0) Finally, schedule and cost estimate for the baseline option are discussed respectively in [5.1.4](#page-91-0) and sections [5.1.5.](#page-92-0)

5.1.2 OBELIX sensor

OBELIX stands for Optimised BELle II monolithic pIXel sensor and is the name of ²⁰ the monolithic active pixel CMOS sensor (or MAPS) proposed as the main option to equip all VTX layers. The introductory section [5.1](#page-72-0) reviews the main requirements on the detector layer in terms of detector performance and the practical constraints related to the integration of the sensor into detection modules. These requirements and constraints lead to the sensor specifications, as explained in

²⁵ section [5.1.2.1.](#page-73-1) The evaluation of the forerunner sensor, TJ-Monopix2, comes next in section [5.1.2.2.](#page-78-0) Then the sensor implementation is presented in section [5.1.2.3](#page-81-0) along with the development schedule.

5.1.2.1 Sensor technical specifications

The sensor technical specifications are reviewed in the following order: the pixel ³⁰ matrix, the trigger logic and track-triggering, the single event effect tolerance, the power dissipation, the sensor interface with the outside world and finally the sensor dimensions. All specifications are summarized in table [5.1.](#page-77-0)

The design of the **pixel matrix** of monolithic sensors drives several key performances. The position resolution, detection efficiency and radiation tolerance

- ³⁵ depend on the depletion and depth of the sensitive volume, the pixel size, the analogue pre-amplification and detection threshold settings. A spatial resolution below 15 μ m typically requires a pixel pitch below 40 μ m. In order to match the material budget between 0.2% X_0 and 0.7% X_0 per layer and taking into account support structures and cables, the sensor thickness in the fiducial volume has
- 40 to be below 100 μ m. Consequently the depleted sensitive thickness should be lower than $50 \mu m$, well in line with available thickness of MAPS. Such thickness

will lead to MIP signals on pixels as low as 1000 electrons and calls for equivalent detection thresholds in the range 100-200 electrons to ensure detection efficiency close to 100%.

- The overall **hit rate capability** of the sensor results from the combination of ⁵ two factors. First comes the rate of fired pixel addresses and associated timestamps that the read-out architecture in the pixel matrix can actually reconstruct efficiently. The second factor is the performance of the logic in the matrix periphery that correlates in time these fired pixel with the triggers available to the sensor.
- 10 The hit rate value of 120 MHz/cm^2 quoted in section [5.1.1](#page-72-1) corresponds to an average rate exceeding by a safety factor of 4 the expectation for the innermost layer presented as the conservative scenario 3 in section [3.4.](#page-40-0) This average value sets the requirements for the overall hit rate, encompassing the performance of the pixel matrix and the periphery treatment. Hence, the corresponding hit rate
- ¹⁵ requirement is referred to as *Hit rate capability at the sensor output* in table [5.1.](#page-77-0) During SuperKEKB injections, short spikes of very high rates are expected. A maximum rate is presently set to be $600 \,\text{MHz}/\text{cm}^2$ for a period of $0.5 \,\mu\text{s}$ every $10 \mu s$, the beam revolution period in the collider. Only the pixel matrix should sustain this maximum value during periods where no triggers are expected, lead-
- ²⁰ ing to a requirement labeled as *Hit rate capability in the matrix* in table [5.1.](#page-77-0) The **trigger logic** storing the hit information coming from the matrix in order to compare their timestamp to the arrival times of triggers, should offer a memory large enough to contain the hit information up to a maximal trigger delay of 10 μ s (extending the current limit of 5 μ s) with a hit rate of 120 MHz cm⁻². ²⁵ In addition, the logic should handle trigger rates up to 30 kHz, which is the un
	- changed maximal L1 trigger rate set in the Belle II technical design report [\[3\]](#page-157-0).

A key requirement for the new sensor consists in achieving a high granularity simultaneously in space and time. While the pixel pitch limit fixed previously 30 addresses the former, the latter leads to a maximum integration time of 100 ns from the trigger arrival time. This limit on the overall **integration time** actually applies to the combination of the timestamp precision with any fluctuation over the matrix of the timestamp reference.

- Providing better position information on tracks than the main tracker (drift ³⁵ chamber) within a time useful for the trigger system would improve the Belle II track-trigger capability. Setting precise specifications for the space-time granularity of such information is not possible without a detailed study of the trigger algorithm, which is not yet available. As an starting point, the sensor should be divided azimuthally into about 10 segments. The information about which of
- ⁴⁰ these regions are hit by particles within about 10 nanoseconds should then be continuously transmitted out of the sensor.

Tolerance to Total Ionizing Dose (TID) and Non Ionizing Energy Loss (NIEL) fluence have been discussed already. But Single Event Effects (SEE) generated

⁴⁵ by radiation might affect the sensor. Since no latchup (SEL) were observed in the past operation years of Belle II, no specification is given. However Single Event

Upsets (SEU) were observed and will be a concern to some extent, but are not yet quantified. Consequently, the first specification is to ensure that the control system allows resetting the sensor registers to operational values at least every few minutes. The actual frequency will be chosen after the measurement of the ⁵ SEU cross section with the OBELIX sensor and the comparison to the occurrence

distribution of large energy loss in the experiment.

The material budget per layer does not only depend on the sensor thickness but also on the services and support structures required to operate the sensor. ¹⁰ The chip should then feature a **pad ring** facilitating the connection with a single light cable. The sensor **power dissipation** is also desired to be as low as possible and constrained within 200 mW cm^{-2} , a value which is anticipated to allow aircooling for the small area of the two inner layers and single phase liquid coolant with small radius polyamide pipes for the outer layers.

- ¹⁵ For the sake of the simplicity of the **system integration**, it is also specified that the sensor is powered through on-chip voltage regulators and features a single rather low data bandwidth $(<200$ Mbps).
- The sensor overall dimensions follow from various constraints. First, the cho- $_{\text{20}}$ sen CMOS technology offers a maximal reticule size of $30 \times 25\,\text{mm}^2$. Considering the need to cover a large area (about 1 m^2 for the outer layers) with a minimal number of chips, matching this size for OBELIX seems benefical. However, the iVTX concepts uses 4 consecutive chips simultaneously diced out of the wafer to make a ladder. Taking into account an expected yield of 60% for individual die,
- ²⁵ it is critical to maximise the number of such potential 4 consecutive dies on the wafer in order to minimise the number of wafers needed to obtain the 20 iVTX ladders. The result of the optimisation is displayed in figure [5.1](#page-76-0) and leads to a chip dimension of $30 \times 19 \text{ mm}^2$.

Assuming a 3 mm width for the digital periphery, as an educated guess from ³⁰ previous sensors in the same technology, the sensitive area or pixel matrix size

reaches $30 \times 16 \,\mathrm{mm}^2$.

Figure 5.1: Sketch of the OBELIX reticule occupancy over an 8 inch diameter wafer. Red rectangles indicate possible dicing area including 4 consecutive sensors, while blue rectangles stand for individual chip dicing.

The specifications regarding the pixel matrix established for the Belle II sensor overlap significantly with the ones used for the development of monolithic pixel sensors targeting the upgrade of the inner tracker of the ATLAS experiment. Within this program, the TJ-Monopix family sensors, depleted MAPS designed in

- ⁵ the TowerJazz 180nm process, match particularly well the Belle II requirements as summarized in table [5.1.](#page-77-0) The first sensor, TJ-Monopix1 has already shown promising detection performance. The second version TJ-Monopix2, featuring a larger matrix and coming with a number of improvements, was fabricated in 2021.
- ¹⁰ It was then decided to use the pixel matrix of TJ-Monopix2 as a starting point for the OBELIX sensor in order to inherit from the results obtained during the development of the TJ-Monopix series. An additional benefit from this choice is that TJ-Monopix2 offers all the functionalities needed for an application-ready sensor: fast output, triggering, slow-control interface. Consequently, TJ-Monopix2
- ¹⁵ can be considered as the first large size prototype for the VXD upgrade. As a consequence, the test system of TJ-Monopix2 will be re-used for the later OBELIX sensor.

5.1.2.2 TJ-Monopix2 as prototype

Sensor description

- ²⁰ The TJ-Monopix2 general view is depicted in figure [5.2.](#page-79-0) The in-pixel collection node and front-end of the TJ-Monopix pixel matrices inherit from the ALPIDE sensor concept [\[74\]](#page-163-0), featuring a small diode and low-threshold discriminator. The fabrication process from Tower Semiconductor, CMOS Image Sensor 180 nm, has been further modified [\[75\]](#page-163-1) in order to enhance the radiation tolerance be-
- $_{25}$ yond $10^{13} \rm{n}_{eq} \rm{cm}^{-2}$. The discrimination threshold can be adjusted for each pixel through a 3-bit DAC and any individual pixel can be masked from the read-out. Four front-end flavours are implemented in four different regions of the pixel matrix [\[76\]](#page-163-2), all aiming for enhanced radiation tolerance compared to the original ALPIDE design. The standard or normal version follows the ALPIDE implemen-
- ³⁰ tation with only transistor size modification. A version targeting higher gain uses a cascode scheme amplification. The two last versions correspond to the introduction of capacitive coupling between the charge-collection electrode and the pre-amplification, normal or cascode. The capacitor allows biasing the collection node at a few tens of volts, way beyond the 1.8 V supply of the technology. These
- ³⁵ so-called HV-normal and HV-cascode flavours are expected to increase the depletion of the sensitive volume compared to the non-HV flavours. Without the AC coupling, the depletion growth depends on the voltages applied on the p-type wells surrounding the collection diode and on the substrate, which have limited excursions.

 40

The read-out architecture implemented within the matrix uses the established synchronous column-drain mechanism developed for the ATLAS FE-I3 readout chip [\[77\]](#page-163-3). For each fired pixels, the leading and trailing edge times are stored in two 7-bit counters clocked at 40 MHz. The end-of-column logic uses these coun-

(b) Photograph of the sensor bonded on a

(a) General layout of the sensor functional blocks.

Figure 5.2: Two different views of the TJ-Monopix2 sensor.

ters to quantify the charge collected by the pixel with the time-over-threshold and to time-stamp the signal arrival with a precision of 25 ns.

The digital logic located at the periphery of the matrix contains an integrated ⁵ read-out controller, LVDS drivers and receivers as well as the command decoder compatible with the RD53B readout chip [\[78\]](#page-163-4), which allows configuring all the chip registers via only four differential lines.

Evaluation

- ¹⁰ The detailed evaluation of the TJ-Monopix2 sensor is currently being performed [\[79\]](#page-163-5). Operation of selected parts of the pixel matrix have been demonstrated with detection threshold from 100 e^- a temporal noise around 6 e^- equivalent noise charge and a fixed pattern noise (taken as the standard deviation of the threshold distribution) corresponding to about 3 e^- equivalent noise charge af-¹⁵ ter tuning the pixels. Both results match with the design values.
	- The VTX collaboration has also conducted optimization of the TJ-Monopix2 chip [\[80,](#page-163-6) [81,](#page-164-0) [82\]](#page-164-1) to acquire experience with operating this sensor technology and find the most performance sensitive parameters.
- ²⁰ Control and data acquisition system is based on the BDAQ53 setup. Since the OBELIX sensor will embed the same control interface, see [5.1.2.3,](#page-81-0) this system will require minimal adaptation for its use for OBELIX characterization. The firmware will essentially need an update to take into account the larger number of pixels and potentially slightly different format for the pixel data.
- ²⁵ Typical results after tuning the matrix are displayed in figure [5.4](#page-80-0) where the dis-

Figure 5.3: Test setup for TJ-Monopix2 using the BDAQ53 system.

Figure 5.4: Threshold and noise distribution obtained on the normal front-end of the TJ-Monopix2 sensor, from [\[82\]](#page-164-1).

tributions of the thresholds and temporal noise for the normal front-end are presented. Considering all pixels of each sub-matrix and for thresholds between 200 to 300 e^- , the average temporal noise varies from 7 to 8 e^- equivalent noise charge depending on the front-end flavor and the temporal noise varies from 10

5 to $17 e^{-}$.

Two test campaigns at the DESY 3-5 GeV electron beam were conducted. Soon after the initial commissioning of TJ-Monopix2 in the laboratory, first detection performance with minimum ionising particles were explored in June 2022 and using an EUDET-type telescope [\[83\]](#page-164-2). Due to the early stage of the sen-¹⁰ sor tuning at that time, only high-threshold operation was established. Figure [5.5](#page-81-1) illustrates the typical cluster charge distribution and residuals. Still, with a threshold set at 500 e^- equivalent charge and an unirradiated sensor featuring a

- high resistivity Czochralski layer, it was possible to obtain above 99.9% detection efficiency.
- ¹⁵ The spatial resolution was estimated to $9.15 \mu m$, slightly better than the digital resolution expected from the $33 \mu m$ pixel pitch and consistent with the small cluster size induced by the relatively high detection threshold. We determined the sensitive depth of the sensor to be $30 \mu m$ (systematic uncertainty $2 \mu m$) via an angular study. This observation justifies the base choice for the starting ma-20 terial of OBELIX-1, namely an epitaxial layer of $30 \mu m$ thickness.
- These results were used to implement a realistic sensor response into the Belle II

Monopix2. Figure 5.5: Distributions obtained with the TJ-Monopix2 sensors recording data from a 4 GeV e- beam at normal incidence, with a threshold of 500 e^- , from [\[82\]](#page-164-1).

software (basf2). The existing model reproducing the digitized signals on each pixel fired by a particle has been tuned to reproduce these beam test results [\[84\]](#page-164-3).

In July 2023, the second test period with beam occurred after the tuning ⁵ of the TJ-Monopix2 sensor was refined. This campaign focused on sensors featuring a 30 μ m epitaxial layer and included a chip irradiated to a fluence^{[1](#page-81-2)} of 5×10^{14} n_{eq}cm⁻². The detection thresholds were tuned in a range from 200 to $300 e^{-}$.

- The data analysis is on-going while this text is being finalised. Only early re-¹⁰ sults are briefly quoted below. The detection efficiency was measured to exceed 99.9% for all un-irradiated front-end flavours. For the irradiated sample, 99.5% detection efficiency can be reached for the AC-coupled front-end when the high voltage is raised to 30 V and the detection threshold lowered to about 200 e^- .
- ¹⁵ This test beam campaign is the last one before the submission of the Belle II dedicated sensor OBELIX-1 based on the TJ-Monopix2 matrix. The early results so far confirms the role of TJ-Monopix2 as a forerunner.

The careful evaluation of the various front-end performances from the last ²⁰ beam test forms the basis for limiting the number of front-end variants (possibly to only 2 versions) in OBELIX-1.

5.1.2.3 Sensor technical implementation

This section describes the technical implementation of the OBELIX sensor in order to match all specifications listed in table [5.1.](#page-77-0)

25

¹Irradiation with 24 MeV proton beam

Figure 5.6: Layout of the OBELIX sensors, right: functional layout, left: physical layout with the various blocks described in the text.

Pixel matrix

5

As explained previously, the pixel matrix in OBELIX reuses the architecture developed for the TJ-Monopix2 sensor described in detail in reference [\[85\]](#page-164-4). Only the main features are underlined here as well as modifications when appropriate.

The pixel conserves exactly the same pitch, $33 \times 33 \, \mu \mathrm{m}^2$, with the same layout for the analogue and digital parts. Based on current characterization results, we decided to choose the Cascode front end flavor and for the next iteration we will keep DC and AC coupling versions on equal area for final verification on the full ¹⁰ size prototype. Pixels are still powered from horizontal rails in order to prevent performance gradients throughout the matrix, inducing the need for power pads on the short side of the sensor.

The signal digitization over 7 bits, through the Time-Over-Threshold method, ¹⁵ and the column-drain read-out architecture implemented for pairs of columns stay unchanged. Also, the 3-bit register to trim the threshold value at the individual pixel level is still included, but the range of the possible correction is enlarged. However, each column-pair is equipped with its individual End-of-Column logic, which actually transmits ToT and timestamp information from ²⁰ each fired pixel to the memory stage, which is discussed in the trigger logic para-

- graph just below. Following the TJ-Monopix2 nomenclature adapted to LHC, the timestamp is also named BCID for bunch crossing identification. The clock frequency driving the precision of the ToT and the BCID changes to a lower value in order to reflect the targeted integration time, typically from 40 down to 20 MHz.
- ²⁵ The current baseline for OBELIX, is then to timestamp fired pixels with a precision of 50 ns.

The matrix read-out logic has been demonstrated [\[85\]](#page-164-4) to sustain a hit-rate beyond 600 MHz cm⁻², covering all the currently expected use-cases in Belle II 30 operation^{[2](#page-82-0)}. The sensor peripheral logic is designed to transmit data to the out-

 2 Additional simulations and test with the fabricated OBELIX-1 sensor will be conducted to estimate the hit-rate limit beyond which the hit detection efficiency for subsequent triggers might

Figure 5.7: Schematic illustrating the principle of operation of the trigger logic unit (TRU).

side world up to a hit-rate of 120 MHz cm^{-2} , as explained in the TRU module description.

Trigger logic (TRU, TXU, TTT)

- ⁵ Two entirely new modules are related to the Belle II trigger. First the trigger logic unit or TRU has the key task to select among the fired pixel information coming from the matrix, those related in-time with the triggers sent by the Belle II system. A second unit, track trigger transmitter (TTT), is in charge to transmit to the trigger system useful information to build a trigger decision based on tracks.
- 10

The TRU module handles the incoming data from the pixel matrix with a two stages of memory as depicted in figure [5.7.](#page-83-0) The first stage memory simply buffers the pixel information, during the trigger latency. In the second stage memory, the fired pixel BCIDs are compared to each trigger time present in a dedicated global

- ¹⁵ memory keeping track of received triggers. When matched, the pixel information is passed to the transmission unit (TXU). The size of both TRU memories have been optimized in order to ensure full efficiency at the maximum hit-rate of 120 MHz cm⁻², taking into account the 30 kHz trigger rate and 10 μ s latency and to minimize the power dissipated. It was verified that the memory size can $_{20}$ also absorb the spikes of excess hit rate at 600 MHz cm $^{\rm −2}.$
- The matching criteria associates to a single trigger fired pixels with a BCID overlapping with the trigger time and also with the next BCID. Since the BCID precision is 50 ns, the duration of the integration window of OBELIX is then 100 ns. This strategy accounts for the possibility that a physics hit associated to a trigger ²⁵ is timestamped with a later BCID due for instance to timewalk effect.
-

The TTT module profits from the presence of a fast signal for each column of the matrix, corresponding to the OR of all pixel outputs along the column. Trading the spatial granularity for speed, the TTT divides the matrix into 8 (still to ³⁰ be confirmed) regions and produces a one byte word indicating which of these regions is fired. The light load represented by a single byte (or even two if

be affected and at which level.

the granularity needs to be extended) allows to transmit this information within typically 100 ns on a line parallel to the main data output of the sensor. The ensemble of such lines can then be input to the trigger system for elaborating a decision based on the vertex information, of course with coarse position preci-⁵ sion.

This functionality is rather exploratory in its current state. It still requires further simulations in correlation with the trigger and full VTX system behaviours, which might lead to further optimisation.

¹⁰ **Control (CRU, synchro)**

The control of the sensor is implemented in the control unit (CRU) exploiting the protocol developed for the RD53 ASICs [\[78\]](#page-163-4), as in the case of TJ-Monopix2. It allows receiving the configuration instructions (i.e. list of masked pixels, threshold settings, etc.) and the in-coming trigger information as well as sending out ¹⁵ the data prepared by the TXU module.

The anticipated data throughput per sensor is estimated to not exceed 100 Mbps in the innermost layer, allowing to use a single physical output line clocked at about 160 MHz.

 20

The OBELIX sensor is configured by setting a number of registers, which define the sensor operation and necessary biases. The protocol is fast enough to allow for reconfiguration of the sensor on a regular basis mitigating potential mis-configurations from single radiation events.

 25

Complementing the control unit, the synchronisation unit uses the SuperKEKB radio-frequency clock (509 MHz), which is provided to one of the sensor input pads, to derive all other needed clocks. The most important ones are the 21.2 MHz clock for the BCID (meaning that the timestamp precision is actu-³⁰ ally 47 ns) and the 169.7 MHz clock for the data output (allowing a 340 Mbps

throughput).

Powering and dissipation estimate

To simplify the power distribution along a single ladder, which may contain up ³⁵ to 24 sensors (see table [5.2\)](#page-86-1), a low dropout (LDO) voltage regulator is included in each sensor. As depicted in the left part of figure [5.6,](#page-82-1) one pad-ring and one associated LDO-regulator dedicated to powering the chip is located on each side of the pixel matrix. That arrangement aims to insure uniform bias supplies throughout the matrix.

 40

The existing description of the various units composing the sensor allows to estimate the power dissipation with the tools provided by the electronic design automation software (EDA). Three main parameters drive the chip current

Figure 5.8: Estimated power of the OBELIX sensor depending on the main front end current (Ibias), timestamping precision (tbin) and hit-rate.

consumption; the current flowing into the front-end, the BCID clock frequency, which drives the timestamping precision and the hit rate. The estimated dependence is showed by figure [5.8.](#page-85-0) This evaluation comes with a 20% uncertainty, which reflects the current status of the sensor design.

It appears that the power budget of 200 mW cm⁻² is exceeded by 10 % at the maximum average hit-rate of 120 MHz cm^{-2} , corresponding to the most pessimistic scenario, and for the best timestamping precision of 50 ns. The power can be recovered within budget by compromising the timing precision either by

 10 worsening the time binning to 100 ns or with lower biasing current to the in-pixel amplifier, which degrades the time walk figure.

Monitoring

5

The temperature and supplied voltages within the sensor are monitored through ¹⁵ dedicated thermal probes and an analogue to digital converter featuring 12 bits (10 bits resolution targeted) and a sampling rate of about 1.7 kHz.

OBELIX schedule

The first version of the sensor, OBELIX-1, is currently being designed by a team ²⁰ composed of six full time designers (about ten people spread over CPPM-Marseille,

Laver			За		C	Total	3b	Total
Radius (mm)	14.1	22.	39.1	89.5	l40.0		69.1	
$#$ Ladders		10	\overline{z}	40	31	104	30	117
# Sensors/ladder			−	16	-24 Ω	2311	1 ດ	2552
Mat. budget (% X_0)			$0.3\,$	$0.5\,$	0.8			$1.9\,$

Table 5.2: The VTX detector main parameters with the two options (3a and 3b) for the radius of the middle layer.

Dortmund University, HEPHY-Vienna, IFIC-Valencia, IPHC-Strasbourg and SiLAB-Bonn) under the coordination of the IPHC-C4Pi^{[3](#page-86-2)}, which takes in charge the ASIC overall integration and submission. The OBELIX-1 chip will be submitted for fabrication in the first quarter of 2024. It is expected for such a complex ASIC that a ⁵ single submission is not enough to reach the sensor quality required for building an experiment. Consequently a second improved version, OBELIX-2, will become the production version.

OBELIX-1 is expected to return from fabrication in the middle of 2024 and ¹⁰ the evaluation of its main performances will require about 6 months. OBELIX-1 featuring the already final size of the VTX sensor, the chip will also be used to prototype final detection modules and layers.

While the design of OBELIX-2 will start in 2024, its submission can only occur ¹⁵ after the characterisation of OBELIX-1, hence at the earliest after Q1-2025.

5.1.3 VTX structure

The VTX proposal consists of five barrel-shaped layers, equipped with the same sensor. The design of the ladders differs due to their active length, varying from 12 to 70 cm to cover the required acceptance ($17^{\circ} < \theta < 150^{\circ}$). The two inner-

- ²⁰ most layers (iVTX) follow an all-silicon ladder concept, the outermost (oVTX) layers require carbon fiber support structures and flex print cables. The VTX targets an overall material budget of about 2.0% X_0 and will be the first light and compact MAPS-based vertex-tracker operating at a high-rate e^+e^- collider.
- Table [5.2](#page-86-1) details the main structural parameters of the VTX detector. As dis-²⁵ cussed in the physics performance section [4.2.4,](#page-62-0) the two options currently under consideration for the radius of the middle layer appear explicitly.

One additional option is being considered, although not explicitly described in this document, to replace the entire VXD with CMOS sensors keeping current detector boundaries as backup option should fatal accidents happen.

³⁰ **5.1.3.1 Ladder concepts**

The two innermost layers of iVTX are placed at radii 14 and 22 mm respectively. They target an individual material budget of about 0.1% X_0 per layer. Such light

³c4Pi is a facility with 22 engineers devoted to the development of CMOS pixel sensors.

Figure 5.9: Two different views of the VTX detector layout for version 3a. The five layers are represented with their support structure, their radii are: 14 , 22 , 39 , 89 , 140 mm.

layer is possible due to the moderate overall surface of these two layers, below 400 cm², the low sensor power dissipation and the few connections needed for the sensor operations. Such conditions make air cooling a viable solution. The monolithic structure is essentially made of four contiguous OBELIX sensor blocks 5 diced out of the production wafers and thinned to 50 μ m except in some border

- areas, that are a few hundred μ m thick to insure mechanical stability. In more detail, a post-processing step etches additional metal strips on a so called redistribution layer (RDL) to interconnect sensors along the ladder and to provide a unique connector at the ladder backward end. The RDL will be produced
- ¹⁰ in a thin-film process with photo lithographic structuring of polymer dielectric and metal layers. Vias connect the sensor bond pads to the metal traces, which route power and data via impedance-controlled transmission lines to the end of the ladder, where a flex cable is connected. Exposed pads are created on top of the RDL to mount surface mounted components (SMD) like bypass capacitors.
- ¹⁵ After the RDL has been processed, the backside of the ladder will be thinned selectively. A thickness of 40-100 μ m is foreseen underneath the active sensor area, the outer perimeter of the ladder remains unthinned for mechanical rigidity. Mounting holes will be added via laser-cutting. The first ladder demonstrator is currently under production (see figure [5.10\)](#page-88-0), to explore the feasibility of the
- ²⁰ two techniques, a large size signal RDL on top of the sensors and the selective backside thinning of the ladder. The demonstrator is based on a blank wafer with dummy heater structures in place of the sensors, allowing to characterize the electrical, mechanical and thermal performance of the ladder design. A working plan, increasing complexity in several steps, is being developed together ²⁵ with IZM (Berlin).

A more traditional approach drives the oVTX ladder concept for the outer layers, strongly inspired by the design successfully developed for the ALICE

Figure 5.10: Schematic view of the iVTX ladder design.

ITS2 [\[86\]](#page-164-5). Each ladder (see figure [5.11\)](#page-89-0) is made of a light carbon fiber support structure, a cold plate including tubes for liquid coolant circulation by negative pressure, a row of sensors glued on the cold plate and finally two flex print cables (see figure [5.13\)](#page-90-0) connecting each half ladder to a connector. For Layer 3 a

- ⁵ single flex exiting on the backward side of the detector can be foreseen in order to allow more room for machine components on the forward. Depending on their radius, the material budget of individual oVTX ladders ranges from 0.3 to 0.8% X_0 , matching the requirements set in section [5.1.1.](#page-72-1)
- ¹⁰ A drawing of the parts composing the Layer 5 ladder is reported in figure [5.12.](#page-90-1)

The $r - \phi$ overlap between adjacent ladders is ensured to be at least 10 pixel pitches for all the ladders, with a clearance between the ladders in radial direction of the order of 1 mm.

15

5.1.3.2 Thermomechanics, services and data acquisition

A specific power density baseline of 200 mW/cm² is assumed in the thermomechanical studies. For iVTX the power could be anyway reduced by operating the front-end at a lower current and/or lower frequency, in case the extreme hit $_{20}$ rate of 120 MHz/cm² is reached in the innermost layer, while power dissipation

could be even lower for oVTX, due to the significant lower hit rate in the external layers.

The proposed VTX detector is expected to be operated at room temperature. The sensor temperature will be monitored both internally, see section [5.1.2.3,](#page-81-0)

- ²⁵ and with additional thermal sensors as implemented in the current VXD [\[87\]](#page-164-6). The usage of the same sensor all over the detector allows a unique control and power system. An important reduction of services with respect to the current VXD is expected, due to smaller cross sections of the data cables with the extensive use of optical fibers, and a less complex cooling (i.e. single phase) system.
- ³⁰ Consequently, simpler overall mechanical support, cabling and acquisition sys-

Figure 5.11: Schematic view of the oVTX ladders: for Layer 3 there are the two solutions at radius 39 mm and 69 mm. Layer 4 and Layer 5 are placed at radii 89 and 140 mm respectively. The green region on the chip corresponds to the periphery, i.e. not sensitive, while the yellow region indicates the sensitive area.

tem are required. In particular, the standard PCIe40 [\[88\]](#page-164-7) acquisition boards used in Belle II match well the data throughput requirement.

The iVTX full-silicon concept is currently being assessed with industrial partners, first using dummy silicon wafers and in future with real sensors. Thermal ⁵ studies, considering power is uniformly dissipated on the sensor surface, demonstrated that air at 15 $\rm ^{\circ}C$ flowing at a speed of 10 m/s is effective to cool a single inner module. The maximum temperature reaches about 20◦C.

At system level, the bottleneck is the space to pass the tubes to bring the air to the IP region: a rough estimate shows that an equivalent cross section of 6 tubes

¹⁰ of 10 mm in diameter is needed to evacuate the 65 W of heat source of the inner layers. An experimental verification of such studies on a dedicated thermal test bench is foreseen in order to produce a mechanical design compatible with the new interaction region.

Prototypes of key elements of the oVTX ladder, the longest carbon fiber sup-¹⁵ port structure and flex cable have been designed and fabricated. For Layer 4 and Layer 5 services (electrical connections and cooling) can be provided both on forward and backward sides, naturally dividing the ladders in two electrical units. To limit the space required on the forward side, giving more room for the accelerator components, for the Layer 3 ladder also the solution with the only

- ²⁰ access on backward has been investigated. Traditional flex circuits can be used to distribute power and for data output for the oVTX. A multiline power bus has been designed and realized first on four-layer process with copper in order to have each OBELIX chip along the ladder powered by a dedicated positive voltage (VDD) and ground (GND) line pair. Trace widths are trimmed to fulfill the
- ²⁵ same maximum voltage drop requirement (200 mV) for all the chips. The electrical tests on signal integrity performed on the prototypes demonstrated that the bandwidth is large enough to allow more than the needed 160 Mbps base-

Figure 5.12: Exploded view of the Layer 5 ladder.

line data throughput.

For the flexible printed circuit in aluminum, the design (see figure [5.13\)](#page-90-0) is following the floorplan of the chip, to allow, after the characterization, also a final test by eventually connecting the final chip.

Figure 5.13: Drawing of the prototype Al flex for the layer 5 half-ladders.

5

A full scale Layer 5 prototype, with kapton heaters mimicking the power dissipation from the chips, has been assembled and characterized on the thermofluidynamic bench. We set the coolant (demineralized water) temperature at $10 °C$ at the inlet, the enviromnent at $20 °C$ and a negative pressure of 0.2 bar. ¹⁰ Three flow configurations (monodirectional, bi-directional and with an U-turn at one end) have been tested and the results have shown an average temperature of 24°C with a maximum gradient $\Delta T \approx 4$ °C along the full length of the ladder, matching the specifications required to safely operate the chip.

Results of the FEA studies on the longest Layer 5 ladder have been confirmed by mechanical measurements on the sagitta distorsion. Also vibrational FEM analysis matched the experimental tests on the truss, showing the first resonance frequency of the structure at 200 Hz, safely far from the typical earthquake fre-⁵ quency. All these tests allowed a validation of design of the longest (i.e. most challenging) Layer 5 ladder.

5.1.4 Road ahead towards realization

The previous sections [5.1.2](#page-73-0) and [5.1.3](#page-86-0) described the intensive R&D program to establish the technical solutions for the sensor and the detection element struc-¹⁰ tures (electric, mechanical and thermal). Both are expected to converge at the end of 2024. Additional developments for the systems to control and acquire the data will start and advance in 2024 in order to identify the main solutions, but not to complete the entire development which may be finalised during the detector production phase .

15

It is hence expected that the VTX critical R&D phase will close at the end of 2024, allowing to enter a production and construction phase should the project be accepted.

²⁰ The production of all the VTX parts is foreseen to last for slightly more than two years. This estimation stems from the following assumptions for the needed part quantities. All parts are produced in quantities including roughly 20% spares. A sixth layers might be added which would typically correspond to retain both options 3a and 3b from table [5.2.](#page-86-1) the VTX geometry requires then the

²⁵ assembly of 20 iVTX ladders and 140 oVTX ladders, which correspond to about 2900 sensors. The ASIC fabrication yield is taken as 50 % and 30 dies are expected per wafer, hence the total number wafers to produce is 195. It is also considered that among the 9 Belle II groups currently involved in the

development of the VTX design (Austria: Vienna; France: Marseille, Orsay, Stras-30 bourg; Germany: Bonn, Göttingen; Italy: Pisa; Japan: KEK, Spain: Valencia) and a few additional groups that may join, about 8 laboratories will join production activities. Finally we elaborate the schedule assuming 4 work days per week and 3 work weeks per month.

• 6 month for the wafer production, followed by 6 months for the probe ³⁵ testing (the integration of sensors onto modules can obviously start before the full probing step is finished). The probing occur a minimum of 2 sites, with 1 wafer tested per day.

• 10 months for the iVTX ladder production, assuming 2 ladders per month at a single production site (IZM, Berlin).

⁴⁰ • 24 months for the oVTX ladder production, assuming 2 ladders per month at 3 sites. It has to be noted that a potential intermediate step will most probably needed, i.e. a ladder being composed of modules. In this case, 2 additional sites will be needed for the module production.

• 12 month for the mounting of the ladders onto partial detector structures, like semi-cylindrical shells representing half-layers, which are then assembled around the beam-pipe outside the Belle II detector. This operation might be done entirely in Japan at KEK or partially in one laboratory in ⁵ Europe.

iVTX and oVTX production can be conducted in parallel and start mid-way (after 3 months) of the wafer testing phase. The shell production can begin after 6 months from the oVTX production start. This very notional plan leads to a total production length of: 6 (wafer prod) + 3 (delay oVTX prod) + 6 (delay full 10 assembly) + 12 (full assembly) = 27 months.

From the point where the VTX is attached to the beam pipe, an additional 6 to 12 month period is needed for installing and commissioning the detector in the Belle II experiment.

15

Under this preliminary schedule, the VTX can be ready to take data between 2.5 to 3 years after the final sensor (OBELIX-2) is submitted to fabrication and without contingency.

5.1.5 VTX cost estimate

²⁰ The VTX cost is estimated from various sources, first the experience of the previous ALICE-ITS2 detector cost, then the part prices actually found during the R&D phase (typically for the cost of the sensors, the ladder structure and flex cables). Cross-checking the estimates obtained from these two sources, the cost breakdown is provided in table [5.3.](#page-92-1)

Table 5.3: Breakdown of the current cost estimate of the VTX in kEUR without any contingency.

Considering the development stage of the project and the possibility of large price fluctuations from the semiconductor industry, it is reasonable to apply a rough 50 % contingency on the production cost and estimate that an envelope of 7400 kEUR will cover the project finalisation.

 25

5.1.6 R&D and technology options

5.1.6.1 DuTiP sensor

One of the promising technology options is a monolithic sensor using Silicon-On-Insulator (SOI) technology. The sensor concept optimized to Belle II upgrade, ⁵ called DuTip (Dual Timer Pixel), was invented [\[89\]](#page-164-8) based on PIXOR striplet detector [\[90\]](#page-164-9). The DuTiP prototypes are fabricated using the SOI technology.

General concept of DuTiP

Under large track density environments, a global shutter readout mode based on level 1 trigger would be adopted to realize a fast readout with low occupancy ¹⁰ allowing for small data transfer rates. Hit information is to be stored in the pixel detector during the trigger latency. Even if a second hit arrives at the same pixel during this period, this information would be also kept. To satisfy these requirements, DuTiP concept was invented.

Fig. [5.14](#page-93-0) shows the block diagram of the DuTiP. The analog part consists of ¹⁵ a pre-amplifier, shaper, and comparator which are the usual configuration for a binary detector. The digital circuit is the most important part of the DuTiP concept. When the binary hit signal is sent to the digital part, one of the timers starts counting down. The starting time is set as trigger latency plus one clock cycle. If the trigger signal is received when the time is 1 (2/0), the signal is ²⁰ readout as current (next/previous) timing (Previous/Current/Next timings are denoted as PCN timings). If trigger signal is not received at the PCN timings in the pixel, the timer is reset. To take into account the second hit in a pixel during trigger latency, a sequencer and two timers are equipped.

The concept does not specify the technology however the complicated digital ²⁵ circuit should be fabricated on each pixel, thus an SOI technology is chosen as a baseline for the development of DuTiP sensor.

Figure 5.14: Analog, Digital and Scan blocks for DuTiP detector. The analog and digital circuits are on a pixel while the Scan block is on a periphery.

SOI Technology

SOI technology has the potential to build thin and low power monolithic sensors for its use in pixel vertex detectors in particle physics experiments. Figure [5.15](#page-94-0) (Left) shows a schematic view of the SOI detector. We choose the Lapis semicon- 5 ductor 0.2 μ m FD-SOI CMOS technology for the development since many pixel detectors are already developed, for example, SOFIST for the ILC [\[91\]](#page-165-0), and pixel detectors for CEPC [\[92\]](#page-165-1) and CLIC [\[93,](#page-165-2) [94\]](#page-165-3).

To fabricate a complicated circuit, reduction of the circuit area is important even for the SOI. Since active regions of NMOS and PMOS can be merged and ¹⁰ the contacts can be shared with the SOI [\[95\]](#page-165-4), the circuit area can be smaller than bulk CMOS with the same process rule (Fig. [5.15](#page-94-0) (Right)). While the SOI implementation is tolerant against neutrons and single event effects, the most important concern is related to surface damage. Charged particles create holes in the $SiO₂$ insulator layer which causes the backgate effect. Nevertheless, this ¹⁵ had been solved incorporating a double SOI structure and test structures have shown radiation tolerance up to 1 MGy [\[96\]](#page-165-5).

Figure 5.15: (Left) Schematic view of SOI. The circuit silicon layer (light yellow) is on the insulator SiO² layer (grey). The sensor silicon layer (sky blue layer) is electrically connected with the circuit layer with through-silicon vias. (Right) Active merge technique to merge PMOS and NMOS.

DuTiP sensor technical specifications

Table [5.4](#page-95-0) shows DuTiP sensor specification. To achieve an intrinsic resolution better than 15 μ m, pixel pitch is chosen to be 45 μ m (Figure [5.16\)](#page-95-1). The sensor ²⁰ active thickness define the amount of generated charge carriers in the bulk. We choose 50 μ m as a baseline however up to 80 μ m meets the requirement for intrinsic resolution. The clock speed is 62.9 ns which is determined by SuperKEKB clock 509 MHz divided by 32. For analog circuits, ALPIDE analog circuit with some modifications for optimizing to the SOI is adopted [\[97\]](#page-165-6). To achieve faster

²⁵ shaping time, the supply current is increased to 200 nA which gives about 500 ns pulse width for the output signal. The equivalent noise charge (ENC) is expected to be less than 100 electrons.

	DuTiP L Sensor (S Sensor)				
Pixel pitch	$45 \,\mu m$				
Sensitive layer thickness	$50 \sim 80 \,\mu m$				
Sensor thickness	$< 100 \,\mathrm{\mu m}$				
Clock speed	62.9 ns				
Trigger latency	$8 \,\mu s$				
Trigger rate	$<30~\mathrm{kHz}$				
Time precision	< 16 ns				
data transfer rate	600 Mbps				
Pixel array size	$21.6 \times 28.8 \,\mathrm{mm}^2 \left(14.4 \times 28.8 \,\mathrm{mm}^2\right)$				
Sensor size	24.4×29.6 mm ² $(17.2 \times 29.6$ mm ²)				

Table 5.4: DuTiP sensor specifications.

The DuTiP sensor is equipped with a 300 MHz LVDS interface which has a data transfer rate of 600 Mbps. Since DuTiP sensor transfers only hit information synchronized with trigger timing, the data rate is expected to be low even for the innermost layer. The sensor size is determined by the reticle size for the SOI ⁵ process. The Lapis Semiconductor SOI process has a successfully demonstrated stitching technique. Three sensors for X-ray imaging were combined into single chip with the stitching technique. DuTiP can also adopt the same technique to produce larger chips which should be more mechanically stable when making ladders.

Figure 5.16: Intrinsic resolutions as a function of incident angle with different (left) pitch and (right) thickness using GEANT MC.

¹⁰ **DuTiP performance with GEANT MC**

The basic performance of the DuTiP sensor is evaluated with simple GEANT MC. The PXD is replaced by two layers of DuTiP sensors, while keeping the beam pipe and SVD untouched. The impact parameter resolution is studied using pions with different momentum (Figure [5.17\)](#page-96-0). The fit results for incident ¹⁵ angle of 90 degree are $\sigma_{r-\phi}(\mu m) = 13.5 \oplus 11.4/p(\text{GeV}) \sin^{3/2} θ$ and $\sigma_Z(\mu m) =$

14.2⊕11.4/ p (GeV) sin^{5/2} θ which are enough good to measure the B meson decay vertices.

Figure 5.17: Impact parameter resolutions for (left) $r-\phi$ and (right) Z directions.

DuTiP Prototype Sensors

The first prototype DuTiP1 were delivered in 2021 (Fig. [5.18](#page-97-0) left). This proto-⁵ type was developed for demonstration of DuTiP concept thus all functionalities in pixel were fabricated while scan block and fast readout system were not implemented. The chip size is 6×6 mm² with a pixel array of 64×64 . The active thickness is 300 μ m which is larger than the baseline. The digital circuit worked using a test pulse with 25 MHz clock. The time resolution of DuTiP is checked ¹⁰ with test pulse. About 5000 electrons are injected to the analog circuit and check the time resolution with faster 50 MHz clock (Figure [5.19\)](#page-97-1). The time resolution is evaluated as 11 ns which is enough smaller than the time bucket of 62.9 ns. The efficiency is checked using a 90 Sr radioactive source with a scintillation counter as the reference. The efficiency is measured as $98 \pm 2\%$. The large ¹⁵ uncertainty is associated with systematic effect of the configuration for the scin-

tillation counter. The efficiency and position resolution will be measured with a electron beam at KEK with reference telescope.

The second prototype DuTiP2 had been delivered in 2022 (Fig. [5.18](#page-97-0) right). This prototype has all functionalities except for fast hit data collection to periph-

²⁰ ery, and is full size in column direction, chip size of 17.2×6 mm² with a pixel array of 32×320 , thus we can perform the full characterization needed for operation (extending the chip size to row direction is trivial). The evaluation is now on-going.

The third prototype DuTiP3 had been submitted in 2023 and will be delivered in 2024 (Figure [5.20\)](#page-98-0). This prototype is based on DuTiP1 and equips the optimized amplifier and LVDS and PLL circuits.

We will submit the fourth prototype having all functionalities needed for real ⁵ DuTiP in 2024.

Figure 5.18: (Left) Picture of the DuTiP1 $(6 \times 6$ mm²). (Right) Picture of the DuTiP2 $(6\times17.2$ mm²).

Figure 5.19: Time resolution of DuTiP. The fit result of 12.6 ns includes a finite binning effect.

5.2 CDC

Assuming that the degradation in CDC performance associated with the injection background observed in 2022 can be mitigated by the SuperKEKB improvements implemented in LS1, the CDC detector is expected to withstand the background ¹⁰ conditions after the Belle II upgrade through Runs 2 and 3. However there are concerns regarding the radiation hardness of components of the CDC readout. While dedicated ageing studies are being prepared to understand possible degradation of the chamber during its lifetime, this section discusses the upgrade path for the electronic components.

		BERRIC CREEK				
			66			
ş						
				÷ ٠		
	1.101 s 63					
	m s					
. .	. .					
	٠					

Figure 5.20: Layout of the DuTiP3 $(6 \times 6$ mm²).

5.2.1 Upgrade of readout electronics

The front-end electronics located inside the detector read 14336 signal lines from the CDC. Figure [5.21](#page-98-1) shows a photograph of the current CDC front-end module.

Figure 5.21: Photograph of the present CDC front-end module.

- With the design luminosity being an order of magnitude higher than the cur-⁵ rently achieved, the operating environment is expected to become much harsher, especially in terms of radiation damage. The expected final dose and fluence at the end of the physics run are, respectively, 1 kGy of gamma rays and $1.0 \times$ 10^{12} n_{eq}/cm² of neutrons, being larger than initially expected at the time of the design of the current front-end modules.
- ¹⁰ In this respect, we plan to upgrade the front-end electronics to operate CDC readout system until the end of the the Belle II experiment. The main critical item on the boards are the optical transceivers, that are very sensitive to the total ionizing dose. Therefore, these components will be replaced with a higher radiation tolerant optical transceivers. The increase in beam currents and luminosity also
- ¹⁵ demands the trigger system to effectively classify physics phenomena of interest under high background conditions. To achieve this, the CDC readout boards are required to transmit more data about particle information while suppressing electrical noise such as on-board cross-talk. A newly developed ASIC chip would enable to operate under such background levels. The expected radiation
- 20 tolerance of the new optical transceiver and ASIC are $\mathcal{O}(1 \,\text{kGy})$ and over $1 \,\text{MGy}$,

respectively. Thus, this upgrade plan will provide solutions to the above requirements for radiation hardness, cross-talk suppression, and faster data transfer.

The development of the ASIC has already been completed, and the first prototype board has been produced. We are currently conducting performance tests ⁵ on the prototype, including radiation tests. In the following section, we give de-

tails about the new components and present the results of the performance tests of the prototypes.

5.2.1.1 New ASD-FADC ASIC

The new ASIC chip has been designed at KEK by the electronics system group us-10 ing a 65-nm CMOS process. This chip consists of eight sets of Amplifier-Shaper-Discriminator (ASD) and Flash Analog-to-Digital Converter (FADC) circuits. In the ASD sector, a double-threshold technique is applied, where the lower threshold makes the time-walk effect small and the higher threshold cuts off electrical noise. Charged particles that create large energy loss can induce smaller elec-

- ¹⁵ trical signals, known as cross-talk, in the surrounding channels within an ASIC chip, compared to signals associated with tracks. Cross-talk signals increase the fake rate of the track trigger as background levels increase. The higher threshold suppresses cross-talk contamination in data, leading to improvements in both online and offline tracking reconstruction performance. Data handling of FADC
- ²⁰ has about 300 ns delay from timing information in the present electronics. FADC gives charge (dE/dx) information, but this is not used for the level-1 trigger decision due to the unacceptable long delay. A trigger-performance study shows the use of charge information in the tracking trigger improves the trigger performance. The FADC of the new ASIC reduces the delay due to data processing
- ²⁵ to about 100 ns and enables the use of charge information in the trigger system. The estimated power consumption of $41.3 \,\mathrm{mW/}$ ch is low compared to the total power consumption of the ASIC and ADC on the current board.

5.2.1.2 Prototype of the upgraded module

We have developed a prototype of the upgraded CDC front-end module that has ³⁰ the same functionality as the current module. To test both, the current and upgraded functionalities, two attachment boards have been produced. Figure [5.22](#page-100-0) shows a picture of the prototype of the new CDC front-end module along with the two attachment boards. The module incorporates the following parts:

- Six ASIC chips to measure signal timing and digitize waveform information
- ³⁵ A Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA) for online data processing for trigger and data acquisition systems
	- A Quad Small Form-factor Pluggable (QSFP) for data transfer to the trigger and data acquisition systems
- SFP connector for standalone performance tests (to be removed in future ⁴⁰ iterations)
	- A connector for the attachment boards to operate B2TT and B2JTAG

Figure 5.22: Prototype of the new CDC front-end module (Left) and the two attachment boards (Right).

One attachment board is designed for the traditional slow control and time/trigger distribution operations with two RJ45 sockets, while the other one is designed to operate over three lanes using a QSFP module. Firmware development is ongoing for the event-data format and link, trigger and timing separately, and the ⁵ former is already available.

The basic performance of the new module, specifically its linearity and gain, has been evaluated using a charge input board and a waveform generator. The gain of the ASD component was measured by using a charge input board. We measured the detection efficiency defined as follows:

$$
\text{ Detection Efficiency} = \frac{\text{\# of Events Proceeding Threshold}}{\text{\# of Input Events}}.\tag{5.1}
$$

¹⁰ We varied the thresholds and calculated the detection efficiency, subsequently determining the pulse height by fitting it with an error function:

$$
\operatorname{erf}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x \exp\left(\frac{-(t-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) dt \tag{5.2}
$$

where μ represents the wave height and σ denotes the uncertainty in wave height. The gain was determined by fitting relationship between wave height and input charge. Figure [5.23](#page-101-0) illustrates the relationship between wave height ¹⁵ and input charge and gain values for each channel. The mean gain value is

approximately 0.83 V/pC , slightly lower than the designed value of 0.9 V/pC . We assessed the time resolution using a CDC test chamber during a dedicated

test-beam campaign. The campaign was conducted at the AR Test Beam Line, KEK, in November 2022 with a ∼3 GeV electron beam. Figure [5.24](#page-101-1) provides ²⁰ an illustration of the beam test setup. The chamber configuration is outlined as follows:

- Cell: $15 \text{ mm} \times 15 \text{ mm}$
- Structure: 8 layers and 44 wires

Figure 5.23: (Left) Relationship between wave height and input charge of channel 0. The red line represents the results of linear fitting. (Right) Gain values for each channel. The red solid and dashed lines represent the mean and mean±RMS values of the gain.

Figure 5.24: Photograph from the electron-beam test.

- Gas mixture: $\text{He:}C_2\text{H}_6 = 50:50$
- High Voltage: 2.37 kV

Time resolution is determined through a fitting process applied to the residual distribution, which is calculated as:

$$
residual = (t_A + t_C) \times \frac{1}{2} - t_B \tag{5.3}
$$

- $\frac{1}{5}$ where t_i represents the timing of particle detection, and i corresponds to the wire ID, as explained in Fig. [5.25.](#page-102-0) For performance comparison between the new module and the existing one, data was also collected using the same setup with the current module. The residual distributions are displayed in Fig. [5.26](#page-102-1) The measured time resolution of the new module is 4.23 ns. This is slightly worse than
- ¹⁰ the current module's performance, but since there are more charged particles at \sim 1 GeV and multiple scattering dominates, the impact of the CDC performance is negligible. Further detailed performance evaluations are still ongoing.

Figure 5.25: Wire configuration. Black dots represent wires in the chamber and are surrounded by drift circles, with diameter equal to the drift time (blue circumferences). The black line indicates the reconstructed trajectory of an electron.

Figure 5.26: Residual distributions obtained at beam test. The red line corresponds to the Gaussian fit result of the black histogram representing the new module TDC counts.

5.2.1.3 Radiation hardness

The radiation tolerance of the front-end module and related optical modules should be examined through gamma-ray and neutron irradiation. The required tolerance is a total dose of 1 kGy and a neutron fluence of $1.0 \times 10^{12} \text{ n/cm}^2$ over ⁵ the 10 years Belle II data acquisition period. Some of the integrated circuits (ICs), including voltage regulators, are identical to those employed in the current module, and their radiation tolerance has already been verified. The new components to be tested are the ASIC, QSFP, and FPGA. The semiconductor technology integrated into the ASIC is acknowledged for its robust radiation re-¹⁰ sistance, adequately enduring the anticipated radiation levels of Belle II.

Regarding the QSFP, typical optical module failures are generated by the total ionizing dose; therefore, we have to find QSFP candidates with sufficient radiation tolerance. To this end, two gamma-ray irradiation tests were conducted at Tokyo Institute of Technology, in March 2022 and February 2023. During these ¹⁵ tests, radiation hardness was evaluated by monitoring errors during the high-

speed communications including also variations between individual modules. As a result, we found three QSFP candidates that meet the required radiation tolerance. These candidates were also qualified against neutron damage, as described below.

As for the FPGA, neutrons can introduce soft errors, leading to unintended logic changes - a phenomenon termed single event upsets (SEUs). The implemented firmware automatically corrects SEUs using a soft-error mitigation scheme provided from Xilinx Inc., but it cannot correct multi-bit upsets (MBUs).

- ⁵ Therefore, when MBUs are detected, data acquisition is temporarily stopped to reprogram the FPGA. The duration of this MBU-induced reprogramming interval potentially constitutes a significant portion of data-acquisition downtime. We conducted a neutron irradiation test at Kobe University using a TANDEM accelerator providing 2 MeV neutrons in March and September 2023. The soft-error
- ¹⁰ mitigation scheme successfully detected soft errors and corrected SEUs and no permanent damage was observed. In the new module, the soft-error rate has reduced to 2/3 while the number of logic blocks is twice that of the current module. This is thought to be attributed to the transition from 65-nm technology to a 28-nm technology FPGA.

¹⁵ **5.2.1.4 Potentially interested community in Belle II**

The design of the new ASIC and layout of the prototype board have been done by experts in KEK Esys group. The mass production of the present readout modules has been conducted in Taiwan. National Taiwan University (NTU) has experiences in performing comprehensive quality assessments across all of these ²⁰ modules. It is anticipated that KEK and NTU will contribute on this upgrade.

5.2.2 Order of magnitude cost estimate

An estimation of the main cost is shown in Table. [5.5.](#page-103-0) We include 10% spare. Cost for mass production of electronics is based on the cost of FPGA. Mass production of the ASIC chip will be completed by the end of JFY2023 (March 2024).

Table 5.5: Estimated cost for mass production of ASD ASIC and readout electronics board.

²⁵ **5.2.3 R&D and technology options**

5.2.3.1 TPC-based tracking system

At sufficiently high luminosity drift chambers will suffer from high occupancy due to their two-dimensional nature. A highly segmented three-dimensional tracker could allow tracking at far higher luminosities. A natural solution would ³⁰ be a gas Time Projection Chamber (TPC) with micropattern gaseous detector

readout, combining low material budget with fine three-dimensional segmentation. With existing technologies, the $\mathcal{O}(10^4)$ CDC cells could be replaced with

 $\mathcal{O}(10^{12})$ effective voxels. Accounting for the $\mathcal{O}(10^2)$ -times longer drift time for primary electrons, such a TPC therefore promises an occupancy reduction of $\mathcal{O}(10^6)$ relative to the CDC.

- A preliminary conceptual design for a TPC-based tracking system for a longer-⁵ term Belle II upgrade was described in Ref. [\[98\]](#page-165-7). The envisioned TPC used an integrated grid (*InGrid*) pixel readout with $200 \mu m$ pixel pitch and continuous binary readout. In this concept, the VTX system is extended to to $r = 44 \text{ cm}$ and optional fast-silicon timing layers at $r = 25$ or 45 cm provide a trigger and lowmomentum track PID via time-of-flight. The preliminary simulation-based stud-
- ¹⁰ ies suggest that such a system could provide comparable tracking performance to the current CDC even in the pessimistic background scenarios investigated, though considerable open questions remain.

Ions generated during amplification drift 100 times slower than the primary elections, so ion backflow (IBF) could lead to performance-degrading space-¹⁵ charge buildup. This is potentially most problematic with injection backgrounds due to the 50 Hz repetition rate of SuperKEKB's top-up scheme. The ion drift time of 3 ms is comparable to the stabalization time of the beam after injection, so the TPC integrates injection backgrounds over bunch revolutions but not over injections. It is not possible to add an active gating layer above the amplification ²⁰ without unacceptable dead-time. The preliminary results suggest that the ion

- density would be comparable to that of current or planned tracking TPCs due to the intrinsically low IBF of InGrid sensors. However, no injection background simulation was available.
- Without a modification of the injection scheme, it would be prudent to min-²⁵ imize the IBF intrinsic to the amplification. One option is to add a second integrated amplification layer that also acts to screen backflowing ions. Such a *TwinGrid* device [\[99\]](#page-165-8) could suppress IBF by a factor up to two orders of magnitude relative to InGrid sensors, to the level of about half an ion per primary electron [\[100\]](#page-165-9). However, injection-background simulation followed by testbeam
- ³⁰ campaigns with prototypes would be needed to confirm acceptable space-charge densities.

Regardless of the source, the overwhelming majority of hits are generated by low-energy electrons spiraling in the gas toward the readout plane. These *microcurlers* arise mainly from Compton scattering of low-energy beam-induced

- ³⁵ background photons in the target gas. While these hits are not an occupancy concern, they could overwhelm the throughput of the system with useless data and obscure hits associated with tracks from collisions. However, microcurlers are very distinctive, and it is likely that they could be identified and filtered out at the front end using embedded machine learning without loss of tracking ⁴⁰ information.
-

Although preliminary and not conclusive, these early findings suggest that a TPC-based tracking system combined with a radially extended vertex detector compared to the current one and the implementation of dedicated trigger and PID detector layers could be viable at luminosities beyond the limits of the CDC,

⁴⁵ and are promising enough to motivate a dedicated R&D program to develop the concept further.

Chapter 6

Outer Detector

6.1 TOP

Editor: *E.Torassa*

⁵ **6.1.1 Introduction**

With four years of running experience at Belle II, the world-record luminosity of SuperKEKB has been accompanied by higher than anticipated backgrounds. For

Figure 6.1: *Description of the back side of one TOP module where electronic boards and photodetectors are interfaced with the quartz prism and quartz bar.*

the TOP subsystem (Fig. [6.1\)](#page-105-0) this means the hit rate and the quantum efficiency degradation of the Micro-Channel Plate Photomultiplier Tubes (MCP-PMTs) must

¹⁰ be monitored to assess the risk that even the last generation, the life-extended atomic layer deposition ALD MCP-PMTs, may not survive until the target integrated luminosity.

R&D has started on a possible silicon photomultiplier (SiPM) replacement option. This option looks promising, although the required cooling will reduce

the space available for the readout electronics and limit its acceptable heat load. Anyway thermal gradients and potential thermal and mechanical stresses need to be carefully evaluated. Moreover, the projected high rates of Single Event Upsets (SEUs) is problematic, as some number of them are not recoverable and ⁵ will lead to increasing data taking loss. There are concerns about the radiation tolerance of the fiber optic transceiver modules connecting the front-end to the back-end electronic boards. Simulations indicated a fairly low radiation of 10 Gy/year with a corresponding expected lifetime of 20 years larger than intrinsic lifetime, but the real background can be largely underestimated.

Figure 6.2: *Expected projection of QE degradation for the three different generations of MCP-PMTs installed in the TOP detector: conventional, ALD and lifeextended ALD. Horizontal axis shows the year and vertical axis is the relative QE.*

- ¹⁰ The timescale for replacement of the TOP photosensors is related to the level of background during the next years. Fig. [6.2](#page-106-0) shows the expected projection of PMT quantum-efficiency (QE) degradation. The Monte Carlo expected background was considered for the components related to the luminosity (Bhabha scattering, two-photon processes) and a maximum limit of 5 MHz/PMT for the
- ¹⁵ other components (beam-gas, Touschek). The expected gradual increase in peak luminosity described in [\[101\]](#page-165-10) was taken into account. In this case, the QE of normal ALD type PMTs will become less than 80 % starting from 2027 and all PMTs will reach this level of QE degradation at around the end of the current luminosity target. Some MCP-PMTs showed a faster than expected reduction in
- ²⁰ QE considering their accumulated charge. One possible explanation is that they operated at a higher temperature for some time due to a temporary cooling system problem. Quantum-efficiency measurements performed in laboratory as a function of the accumulated charge show a faster degradation at higher temperatures (Fig. [6.3\)](#page-107-0). New readout electronics with reduced power consumption can
- 25 help to increase the MCP-PMTs lifetime.

Figure 6.3: *Relative QE degradation as a function of the accumulated charge at* 20◦C *and* 40◦C *for two MCP-PMTs.*

Planning has started for these upgrades happening during a possible long shutdown to rebuild the interaction region on the timescale of roughly 5 years from now.

6.1.2 TOP program summary

- ⁵ The rudimentary schedule and cost estimates for the electronic readout are based upon production and delivery of the 8k channels of TOP readout. This endeavor leverages heavily two sizeable past and new investments: re-use of existing infrastructure and firmware, wherever possible and development of ASICs appropriate to the TOP upgrade. In both cases the pre-production plus production ¹⁰ timescale is approximately 2 years, with 6-9 months for installation and com-
- missioning. Based upon the preliminary prototyping being performed and costed separately from this, the total project cost is estimated to be 3.1 M\$ for upgrades to the TOP readout systems. For the photosensors the primary option is the replacement of normal ALD PMTs with life extended ALD MCP-PMTs once the
- ¹⁵ installed PMTs approach the end of their lifetime. With this option, we need 220 new MCP-PMTs to replace normal ALD type PMTs, which costs is estimated to be 1.6 M\$. The production of life-extended ALD MCP-PMT already restarted, 90 MCP-PMTs have been ordered, 30 of them have been delivered. A further improvement in the ALD technology and the MCP-PMTs replacement with cold
- ²⁰ SiPMs are the possible solutions if the increase of luminosity leads to a rapid loss of efficiency of the life extended ALD MCP-PMTs.

6.1.3 Upgrade proposal

The goals of baseline upgrade to the readout electronics are twofold: reduce significantly their size, as well as the power required. Both goals facilitate the ²⁵ implementation of the requisite cooling needed to operate the SiPMs in single-

photon detection (though with significantly increased dark-count) mode.
In order to reduce cost and development time, much of the existing software, firmware and hardware infrastructure can be retained. The boundary conditions considered for this costing exercise are:

- Retain the Standard Control Read-Out Data (SCROD) board, the existing ⁵ cables and low-voltage power system
	- Remove the HV divider chain/delivery board and associated cables
	- Employ multiple Analog to digital converter System-on-Chip (ASoC) per ASIC "Carrier" card, each with multiple Gbps connections to the SCROD FPGA
- ¹⁰ Based upon this proposed modification, the upgraded readout system still consists of 64 "board stacks" and 4 ASIC "carrier" cards per "board stack". The new ASIC "carrier" card will no longer have a FPGA to reduce radiation fault events and employ eight 4-channel readout AISCs per card with point-to-point Gbit serial links to the SCROD FPGA. For the photosensors, the Hamamatsu pro-
- ¹⁵ duction line of life-extended ALD MCP-PMT is still operating with an expected output of 10 MCP-PMTs/month. The possible further increase of lifetime can be investigated for example by an optimization of the atomic layer thickness. The option of MCP-PMT replacement requires several studies and possibly further SiPM developments with the goal to reduce the dark count rate. It's important
- ²⁰ to find best balance among different SiPM's characteristics: single device size, single cell dimension, operating temperature. Considering the expected neutron rate near the photodetector region at the target instantaneous luminosity of 6×10^{35} cm⁻²s⁻¹ is about 2.0×10^{10} n/(cm²·year), we need to be able to distinguish single photons at least up to an irradiation of $1\times10^{11}\,\mathrm{n/cm^2},$ even more for
- ²⁵ higher luminosity. We need also to keep a good photon efficiency, a good time resolution and have acceptable thermal and mechanical stresses for the detector. The single channel active area of the MCP-PMT with 16 channels and $1 in^2$ size is about 6×6 mm² anyway smaller SiPMs have been considered to limit the impact of the dark count rate to the single photoelectron spectrum. Sixteen
- 30 Hamamtsu SiPMs $1.3 \times 1.3 \ mm^2$ size and 50 μm cells have been irradiated from 1.03×10^9 n/cm² to 5.07×10^{11} n/cm². The single photon spectra are shown in Fig. [6.4](#page-109-0) for two different irradiation at different temperatures. In the most critical condition with 5.07×10^{11} n/cm² and 20°C the single photon peak cannot be distinguished from the dark count background. From this preliminary test
- ³⁵ SiPMs at -20 °C look like a possible solution also with 5 times more expected background. However it should be noted that using 1.3×1.3 mm^2 SiPMs will require 20 times more electronic channels or a multiplexing downstream of the SiPM amplification.

6.1.4 Design development and human resources

⁴⁰ The design of the new electronics is still to be defined. The measured power consumption of the ASoC analog to digital converter is about 50% lower than the current IRSx ASIC but to properly estimate power differences full details of the new boards are needed. The primary option for the photosensors is to replace

Figure 6.4: *Single photoelectron spectrum (number of entries vs signal amplitude* $\,$ in ADC counts) for an irradiation of 5.07×10^{11} $\rm{n/cm^2}$ (left) and 5.07×10^{10} $\rm{n/cm^2}$ *(right) at different temperatures. Signal peaks have been fitted with the convolution of a Poisson distribution with some double Gaussian functions (dashed lines), a Gaussian background (yellow) has been added to the fit.*

the older ALD MCP-PMTs, when they reach their lifetime limit, with life-extended ALD MCP-PMTs. It is anticipated that for the photosensor upgrade, Nagoya U., INFN/U. Padova and INFN/U. Torino; while for the electronics upgrade, Indiana U, U. Hawaii, U. Pittsburgh and Nalu Scientific personnel will be the primary ₅ contributors.

6.1.5 Cost and schedule

It is anticipated that 2 engineers will be involved in the design of the carrier card board, at 1.5 FTE for year 1 and year 2. Full-time funding for 1 postdoc and 1 graduate student to assist in assembly, test and documentation is requested, ¹⁰ under the oversight of U. Hawaii instrumentation frontier professor. Board fabrication and assembly costs are based upon those realized during earlier prototyping. After the pre-production a yearly firmware development engineering support is costed during the 2 years of production, and at a reduced level during commissioning. The estimated costs of the electronics upgrade are described in

¹⁵ Table [6.1.](#page-110-0) The estimated costs for the replacement of the 220 ALD MCP-PMTs are described in Table [6.2](#page-110-1) for life-extended ALD MCP-PMT option and in Table [6.3](#page-110-2) for the SiPM option.

ASoC ASIC readout Upgrade				
Phase	Resource	Basis of est.	Cost (k\$)	
Pre-production	Engineering & test	1.5 FTE	610	
	Parts procur. & assembly	cost summary	120	
Production	Engineering & test	1.5 FTE	610	
	Parts procur. & assembly	cost summary	800	
Commissioning	Integration & Installation	1.0 FTE	445	
Subtotal			2585	
Contingency (20%)			517	
Total			3102	

Table 6.1: TOP readout electronics upgrade estimate.

Table 6.2: Life-extended ALD MCP-PMT upgrade cost est.

Table 6.3: SiPM upgrade cost est.

Phase	Resource	Basis of est.	Cost (k\$)
Pre-production	Engineering	0.5 FTE	50
	SiPM R&D	Engr. est.	10
	Cooling R&D	Engr. est.	50
Production	Engineering	0.5 FTE	50
	$SiPM + assembly parts$	Engr. est.	700
	Cooling system	Engr. est.	100
Commissioning	Integration	0.5 FTE	50
Contingency (20%)			202
Total			1212

6.2 KLM

Editor: *L.Piilonen, X.Wang, G.Varner*

Two independent upgrades have been proposed for the Belle II KLM subdetector, which identifies K_L mesons and muons. The KLM is described briefly in ⁵ Sec. [6.2.1.](#page-111-0)

The first upgrade adds the capability of energy measurement for the K_L mesons via a time-of-flight measurement in new scintillator bars. This upgrade would rebuild each detector panel and replace all existing resistive plate chambers (RPCs) in the barrel with scintillators. The precision-timing aspect of this

- ¹⁰ upgrade is described in Sec. [6.2.2.](#page-112-0) At the same time, the existing scintillator readout would be replaced by moving the external analog and analog-to-digital readout elements into the detector panels, simplifying immensely the external connections. This is described in Sec. [6.2.2.5.](#page-117-0)
- The second upgrade continues to use the existing RPCs, rather than replac-¹⁵ ing them with scintillators, and operates them at somewhat lower voltage in avalanche mode rather than in the extant streamer mode. The motivation here is to improve the immunity to the ambient neutron background that would otherwise lower the instantaneous efficiency of the RPCs. This upgrade is described in Sec. [6.2.3.](#page-119-0)

²⁰ **6.2.1 KLM geometry and instrumentation**

The KLM subdetector occupies the volume outside the superconducting solenoid, spanning radii of 200−340 cm in the octagonal barrel and 130−340 cm in the forward and backward endcaps. Large-surface-area detector panels of about 3.1-cm thickness are sandwiched in the gaps between the steel plates of the solenoid's

- ²⁵ magnetic-field flux return (Fig. [6.5\)](#page-112-1). Each panel contains either RPCs (barrel layers 3–15) or scintillator strips (barrel layers 1–2, forward-endcap layers 1– 14 and backward-endcap layers 1–12). Each readout strip is about 4 cm wide, measured orthogonal to a line from the SuperKEKB e^+e^- collider's interaction point (IP); this matches the Molière radius of muons originating at the inter-
- ³⁰ action point and traversing the electromagnetic calorimeter located just inside the solenoid. Each strip can be up to 2.7 m long. Each detector panel provides a three-dimensional measurement of a through-going particle's position via hits on two orthogonal readout strips within the panel, constrained by the spatial location of the panel itself. There are about 38,000 readout channels in the KLM, 35 almost equally split between RPCs and scintillators.

Each RPC has two orthogonal planes of copper strips (on kapton sheets) that image the streamer that forms within either—*or both*—of the two independently operated RPCs within the detector panel when a charged particle passes through either RPC gas gap. Each strip acts as a transmission line that delivers the imaged 40 streamer-mode pulse (amplitude $\sim 200 \,\mathrm{mV}$) to the panel's readout end.

The cross section of each barrel scintillator strip is $4 \text{ cm} \times 1 \text{ cm}$, so each panel in layers 1–2 contains 54 *z*-readout strips and between 38 and 45 ϕ -readout strips, for a total of 92 to 99 strips. The cross section of each endcap scintillator

Figure 6.5: End view of one octant of the KLM barrel, showing the thin detector panels (light gray) sandwiched between the steel plates (dark gray) of the solenoid's flux return. The kites and bar are removable steel plates.

strip is $4 \text{ cm} \times 0.7 \text{ cm}$; each panel contains 75 x-readout strips and 75 y-readout strips for a total of 150 strips. Photons from each scintillator strip are collected by an embedded wavelength-shifting optical fiber (Kuraray Y11(200)MSJ) and detected by a Silicon PhotoMultiplier (SiPM), also known as a Multi-Pixel Pho-⁵ ton Counter (MPPC)—an avalanche photodiode operated in Geiger mode. This

solid-state device, the Hamamatsu S10362-13-050C, is affixed directly to the scintillator strip at one end of the WLS fiber. The fiber's other end is mirrored.

The RPC-strip and scintillator-MPPC signals (preamplified internally by a factor of ∼10 for the scintillators) are routed via ribbon cables to external readout 10 electronics mounted on the magnet yoke.

6.2.2 Upgrade path 1: precision timing for K_L **momentum**

The motivations for pursuing the precision-timing upgrade path are twofold. First, it improves our ability to use timing information to reject out-of-time hits in the KLM arising from the ambient neutron flux that would otherwise contribute

 15 to the background in any B -physics or dark-matter related searches. Second, it adds the capability to measure the four-momentum of K_L candidates—not just the direction as is presently done—so that B or D decay modes with this particle in the final state can be added with a quality similar to that attained in the modes with the K_S meson. (In certain CP -sensitive studies, the opposite CP value for

 20 K_L vs K_S bolsters our confidence in the validity of the measurements with the K_S meson.)

There is no marked difference in the muon- or K_L -identification performance measures for the existing RPCs and scintillators. Both are able to measure the direction of the line joining the interaction point (IP) to a reconstructed hadronic 25 cluster to about 2° in the polar and azimuthal angles (assuming that the cluster

was created by a parent K_L meson that originated at the IP).

The precise hit-time measurement can be used to veto any hit that is more than ± 1 ns out of coincidence with the event's electron-positron collision time,

which would be an improvement over the present ± 10 ns coincidence-window capability. This would permit better rejection of out-of-time background hits that would otherwise contaminate the prompt K_L -candidate population or any dark-matter-like event.

- ⁵ Additionally, better scintillators and readout electronics would provide a precise time-of-flight measurement for the KLM clusters that arise from hadronic interactions of a K_L meson in either the yoke steel or in the ECL (with shower leakage into the KLM). This time-of-flight measurement requires both the start time of the electron-positron collision at the IP (known to better than 32 ps)
- 10 and the stop time at the point of the K_L hadronic interaction (or debris) in the KLM. This flight time and the flight length from the IP can be converted to the candidate K_L meson's momentum magnitude, which is not measurable in the present KLM. Combining this with the already measurable direction, the four-momentum of this hadron can be determined. A stop-time resolution of
- $15 \delta t = 100 \text{ ps}$ and a flight length of 2 m from the IP provides a momentum resolution of $\delta p = 0.19 \,\text{GeV}/c$ for a K_L with a momentum of 1.5 GeV/c, i.e., a fractional resolution of $\delta p/p \approx 13\%$. The new ability to measure the four-momentum improves the momentum resolution of the parent particle in physics modes with a K_L meson in the final state, such as $B^0 \to J/\psi K_L$, and reduces the accidental ²⁰ background in such modes.

With several years of R&D in hand, it is found that the combination of pure scintillators with long attenuation length *and without an embedded wavelengthshifting fiber*, large-area photosensors, and custom preamplifiers with improved timing can achieve the aforementioned stop-time resolution. This R&D pro-

- ²⁵ gram, elaborated in the following subsections, encompasses the evaluation of new large-area photosensors from Hamamatsu and NDL (Beijing) coupled to new preamplifiers tailored for SiPM readout, with one or more SiPMs attached to a single scintillator strip (up to 1 m in length); the Geant4 simulation of each geometry variant (for different scintillator thicknesses and arrangements); the
- ³⁰ assessment of various algorithms to extract the stop time of the collection of hits within a cluster; and the resultant timing and momentum resolution for the associated K_L meson.

6.2.2.1 New SiPM and preamplifier

The new 6×6 mm² Hamamatsu and NDL SiPMs (S14610-6050HS and EQR15 ³⁵ 11-6060D-S, respectively) are combined with a novel high-speed and low-noise preamplifier [\[102\]](#page-165-0). This preamplifier has good gain stability, a bandwidth of 426 MHz, a baseline noise of $\sim 0.6 \text{ mV}$, and a dynamic range for the input signal of up to $170 \,\mathrm{mV}$. Figure [6.6](#page-114-0) shows the R&D setup for studying the intrinsic time resolution for various SiPM and preamplifier combinations illuminated directly by

⁴⁰ short laser pulses. A time resolution of about 20 ps per cluster has been achieved for clusters with 50 or more pixels (i.e., detected photons). Pole-zero cancellation in the preamplifier shortens the long tail of a typical SiPM pulse to about 5 ns so that no pile-up is observed for laser-pulse frequencies up to 20 MHz.

Figure 6.6: Measurement of the intrinsic time resolution for SiPM-preamplifier combinations. The top schematic shows the diagram of the apparatus while panel (a) is a photograph of the interior of the dark box containing the laser, the SiPMs and the preamplifiers. Graph (b) shows the measured time resolution versus the number of detected photons for several SiPMs.

6.2.2.2 Time resolution of long scintillator bar

The precision of the time-of-flight measurement for a K_L candidate is improved with more struck scintillators in its hadronic cluster. This requires multiple layers with pure scintillators having very long attenuation length, rather than the

⁵ extruded scintillators with embedded wavelength-shifting fibers presently in use in the KLM.

Pure-scintillator samples from Bicron (BC420) and GaoNengKeDi are tested. Figure [6.7](#page-115-0) shows one test with two GaoNengKeDi strips $(2 \text{ cm} \times 5 \text{ cm} \times 1 \text{ m})$ and arrays of 12 SiPMs at the two ends of each strip. The 12 SiPMs are arranged ¹⁰ in parallel ("12P") or parallel+series ("3P4S") on a printed circuit board. Two short scintillator strips (10 cm length) are used to generate a cosmic-ray trigger with a detection efficiency in the long strip of nearly 100%. SiPMs in series show a better time resolution of about 70 ps but with a smaller pulse height compared to SiPMs in parallel. A hybrid arrangement of the SiPMs shows a good balance ¹⁵ between time resolution and pulse height.

To maintain the required timing precision over time, a robust calibration protocol with frequent updates each day will be necessary for the TOF-like KLM. This requires an integrated laser-calibration infrastructure. A cosmic ray test with six strips ($\delta t \sim 130 \,\text{ps}$ per strip), calibrated with a laser split among the six channels,

²⁰ yields a speed distribution of (30.0 ± 3.4) cm/ns or 11% for throughgoing cosmic rays (moving at almost the speed of light).

Figure 6.7: Cosmic-ray test of two GaoNengKeDi 1 m long scintillators. Top left shows the photograph and schematic of the apparatus, with a 3×4 array of SiPMs at each end of a scintillator. Top right shows typical signal pulses for this (3P4S) and the parallel (12P) SiPM configurations. Bottom left graphs show the time distributions and extracted resolutions for these two configurations. After unfolding the trigger-scintillator resolution, the time resolutions are 70 ps (3P4S) and 87 ps (12P). Bottom right scatterplot shows the range of observed pulse heights at the two ends of a scintillator.

6.2.2.3 Geant4 simulation for the K_L **momentum determination**

One barrel octant of an upgraded KLM with 15 layers of precision-timing scintillator panels is simulated with Geant4, as shown in Fig. [6.8.](#page-116-0) The active components are pure scintillators with a long attenuation length and SiPM arrays at ⁵ both ends of each scintillator strip. The ECL is not included in this simulation. K_L mesons and muons with a momentum of $1 \text{ GeV}/c$ are generated at the IP using the Geant4 particle gun. The figure shows the responses for a muon (clean track) and a K_L meson (hadronic cluster). A preliminary algorithm is developed to extract the K_L arrival time from selected (earliest) hit times in the cluster and ¹⁰ has a FWHM resolution of about 240 ps. A Gaussian fit to this leading-edge time distribution yields $\sigma = (95 \pm 4)$ ps, consistent with the FWHM measure.

6.2.2.4 Replacement of the RPC layers in the barrel

Concurrently with the upgrade of the innermost three barrel layers for the precisiontiming capability, it would be prudent to take this opportunity to replace the

- ¹⁵ RPCs in the outer twelve barrel layers with present-design scintillator panels. The design of each panel would match that of the existing scintillator panels in the two innermost barrel layers: each $4 \text{ cm} \times 1 \text{ cm}$ scintillator strip is extruded with a central bore for a wavelength-shifting optical fiber that captures the light generated within the scintillator and transmits the wavelength-shifted light via
- total internal reflection to one end that is instrumented with a single SiPM. A

Figure 6.8: Geant4 simulation results for one barrel octant of an upgraded KLM with precision time-of-flight scintillators. Top left: response for one $1 \, \text{GeV}/c$ muon. top right: response for one $1 \text{ GeV}/c$ K_L meson. Bottom left: time distribution of hits in each layer and cumulative for the K_L cluster; the resolution of (95 ± 4) ps is extracted from a fit to the leading-edge (earliest) times in this graph. Bottom right: population distribution of scintillator signals for the K_L cluster.

protective and reflective $TiO₂$ -loaded polystyrene jacket is co-extruded with the scintillator strip.

6.2.2.5 Improved scintillator front-end readout

Leveraging experience from the deployment and operation of the endcap and ⁵ inner barrel KLM scintillators, there is a compelling reason to refactor the readout in a way that eliminates the many kilometers of twisted-pair ribbon cables. We propose a more compact readout placed inside each detector panel that interfaces with the external DAQ system via a few optical fibers. This readout upgrade would be implemented in conjunction with the TOF-like KLM upgrade ¹⁰ described earlier.

The new readout embeds the readout ASICs on circuit boards inside each new detector panel, and incorporates a newly developed more compact SCROD (Control and Readout) card that also resides inside the detector panel. We propose to use the HDSoC ASIC, which has four times higher channel density than the ex-

¹⁵ isting TARGETX. The HDSoC ASIC utilizes a high-speed serial connection to the new SCROD FPGA. For the barrel KLM (15 layers), this new readout system will consist of 480 HDSoC ASICs and 240 SCRODs. For the endcap KLM (five new precise-timing layers at each end), this system will contain 120 HDSoC ASICs and 40 SCRODs.

²⁰ **6.2.2.6 Materials cost estimate**

This cost estimate is based on a scenario in which the three innermost barrel layers and five innermost layers in each endcap are replaced with precision-timing scintillators while the RPCs in the outermost twelve barrel layers are replaced with standard-design scintillators and SiPMs (Sec. [6.2.2.4\)](#page-115-1). All new detector

²⁵ panels would be instrumented with the new readout described in Sec. [6.2.2.5.](#page-117-0) Labor cost is not included here since some of the personnel might already be on an institution's payroll.

Table [6.4](#page-118-0) itemizes the estimated material costs for each element of this upgrade. The precision-timing scintillators would cost \$0.3M for the three barrel

³⁰ layers and \$0.5M for the ten endcap layers, based on material costs in China. With an array of eight NDL SiPMs at each end of a scintillator strip, the photosensors would cost an additional \$0.8M for the barrel and \$1.0M for the endcaps. Customized precision-timing preamplifiers (one preamplifier at each end of a scintillator strip) would cost an additional \$0.3M for the barrel and \$0.4M 35 for the endcaps. Contingency is not included here.

The replacement of the RPCs in the outermost twelve barrel layers with current-design scintillator panels would cost about \$3.4M, based on the actual costs for all of the components (strips, WLS fiber, photosensors, frame and passive materials, HV, shipping) and escalation for the greater geometric size and ⁴⁰ inflation at 3% per year. This includes a 20% contingency.

The associated front-end readout upgrade is estimated to cost between \$1.4M (utilizing the HDSoC ASIC with internal amplification) and \$1.8M (if discrete amplifiers are deployed instead). Development and prototyping of the new ASIC and SCROD would add an estimated \$1.6M to the total readout project cost.

In summary, the rough estimate of the material cost of this upgrade is \$9.6M.

Table 6.4: KLM Upgrade material cost estimates. This assumes that the items for the TOF upgrade would be procured in China while the items for the RPCreplacement upgrade and the readout upgrade would be procured in the US.

	Quantity	Unit cost	Cost (k\$)
Barrel TOF Upgrade (layers 1-3)			
Scintillator volume	5.724 $m3$	$$55000/m^3$	315
Photosensors (16/scintillator strip)	75008	\$10/item	750
Preamplifiers (2/scintillator strip)	9376	\$30/item	281
Endcap TOF Upgrade (layers 1-5)x2			
Scintillator volume	$9.302 \,\mathrm{m}^3$	\$55000/m ³	315
Photosensors (16/scintillator strip)	96000	\$10/item	960
Preamplifiers (2/scintillator strip)	12000	\$30/item	360
Barrel RPC-to-scint (layers 4-15)			
Scintillator volume	$15.686 \,\mathrm{m}^3$	\$34000/m ³	535
WLS fiber length	2900 m	\$133/m	386
Photosensors (1/scintillator strip)	22856	\$44/item	1005
Al frames, HDPE sheets, etc.	192 panels	\$2700/item	520
Shipping (US to KEK)	28 crates	\$7000/item	196
HV modules (CAEN A1510)	16 units	\$10750/item	172
HV mainframes (CAEN SY2527)	2 units	\$20000/item	40
Contingency (20%)			571
Readout Upgrade			
Parts for above layers			1400
HDSoC-related R&D			1600
ESTIMATED MATERIAL COST			9603

6.2.2.7 Upgrade logistics

- ⁵ This upgrade requires the roll-out of Belle II from the interaction region and the opening of the forward and backward endcap doors to gain access to the barrel and endcap KLM detector panels. In the roll-in position, the base of the beamline-supporting concrete shield prevents access to the bottom three sectors of the barrel KLM at the forward and backward ends.
- ¹⁰ If all existing barrel detector panels (backward *and* forward) are removed from the forward end and the new panels are inserted from this end, then all other-subsystem cables and services that reside in the service channels at the forward face of the barrel yoke would have to be peeled away to permit these panel insertion/extraction operations, and then re-installed at their conclusion.
- ¹⁵ In this forward-access scenario, the other-subsystem cables and services at the backward barrel yoke would not be disrupted. The KLM cables and services at both ends of the barrel yoke can be disconnected and reconnected without

touching the other subsystems' cables and services. The endcap KLM sectors can be accessed without disturbing the other subsystems' cables and services.

We estimate that it would take one calendar year to accomplish these steps, including the time needed during the new-panel installation for testing and, if ⁵ necessary, remediation.

6.2.3 Upgrade path 2: RPC avalanche mode

The second upgrade path does not replace any of the existing KLM detector panels but instead addresses the inherent rate limitation of the barrel RPCs and their related blinding by the ambient neutron flux in the KLM during high-luminosity

- ¹⁰ operation in the coming years. In this upgrade, the present streamer mode of RPC operation is replaced with the avalanche mode. In this way, the blinding from the localized discharge of the glass-plate electrodes by the streamer is avoided, since the gas-gap electric field will not be reduced so dramatically by the avalanche induced by an ambient neutron's interactions with the nearby
- ¹⁵ material. Since the imaged pulse height is reduced by a factor of about 10, the avalanche-mode pulses will require new in-line preamplifiers at the detectorpanel faces at the forward and backward barrel yoke.

There are significant uncertainties in the expected particle flux at the design luminosity and in the RPC efficiency as a function of particle flux. Operating the

²⁰ RPCs in avalanche mode mitigates the dual risks of a higher-than-expected background neutron flux and/or a worse-than-expected rolloff of the RPC efficiency due to blindness from the high flux.

6.2.3.1 RPC response in streamer and avalanche modes

Here, we explore the shifts in detector response when operating the KLM RPCs ²⁵ in avalanche mode. We also address the necessary modifications of the front-end electronics, gas mixture, and operating voltage.

The RPC rate capability is inversely proportional to the average charge $\langle Q \rangle$ produced in the gas gap by an incident particle [\[103\]](#page-165-1):

Rate Capability
$$
\propto \frac{1}{\rho t \langle Q \rangle}
$$

where ρ is the bulk resistivity and t is the total thickness of the electrodes. Given that the glass electrodes will not be replaced, this rate capability can only be increased by reducing $\langle Q \rangle$. This approach is constrained by the existing noise

- ³⁰ levels within the system and the sensitivity of the readout electronics. We note that the charge received by the front-end electronics is significantly smaller than the $\langle Q \rangle$ formed in the gas gap. In our RPCs, the far end of each cathode strip is terminated to avoid pulse reflections: this implies a factor of two reduction in the signal at the preamplifier.
- ³⁵ The KLM's glass-electrode RPCs, originally built for the first-generation Belle experiment, have undergone thorough examination and analysis [\[104,](#page-166-0) [105,](#page-166-1) [106,](#page-166-2) [107,](#page-166-3) [108\]](#page-166-4). The electrodes surround a 2 mm gas gap. The $\langle Q \rangle$ values are depicted

in Fig. [6.9](#page-120-0) for streamer-mode operation. In these papers, it was established that the typical streamer discharge has $\langle Q \rangle \sim \mathcal{O}(100 \,\text{pC})$.

This value is comparable to those in ATLAS for 2 mm gas gap RPCs with Bakelite electrodes operating in streamer mode with various gas mixtures and a range 5 of high voltages: $\langle Q \rangle \sim 30 \,\text{pC}$ [\[109\]](#page-166-5), $70 - 120 \,\text{pC}$ [\[110\]](#page-166-6) and $50 - 60 \,\text{pC}$ [\[111\]](#page-167-0).

Mean Charge vs HV

Figure 6.9: Mean charge $\langle Q \rangle$ for the Belle-style RPCs operated in streamer mode with various gas mixtures and over a range of high-voltage settings.

In the past two decades, it has become a prevailing practice to operate RPCs in avalanche mode, wherein charge generation and amplification in the gas gap is quenched during the avalanche phase, avoiding progression to the streamer phase. This can be achieved through the use of an electronegative gas like 10 SF₆ as a quenching agent and by reducing the operating voltage. As a result, avalanche events are distinguished from streamer events by their notably smaller $\langle Q \rangle$ and distinct timing characteristics. For the ATLAS RPCs operated in avalanche mode [\[109\]](#page-166-5), a range of voltages with high efficiency *and* low streamer probability (for each gas mixture) can be seen in Fig. [6.10.](#page-121-0)

15 The mean charge in the ATLAS RPCs operated in proportional mode is $\langle Q \rangle \sim$ 9 pC with these gas-mixture and HV modifications. This has been reduced further to $\langle Q \rangle \sim 2 \,\text{pC}$ by the deployment of a novel preamplifier, as detailed in Sec. [6.2.3.3.](#page-121-1)

6.2.3.2 Gas mixture

- ²⁰ Currently, the RPCs use a gas mixture consisting of 30% argon, 8% butane, and 62% HFC-134a. Various studies have explored alternative gas mixtures with similar glass RPCs, revealing a noteworthy shift toward lower signal charge while maintaining high efficiency. In particular, the introduction of $SF₆$, characterized by its high electron affinity of 1.05 eV, appears to play a crucial role in avoiding
- streamer formation.

Figure 6.10: Efficiency (solid) and streamer-probability (dashed) curves for the standard gas mixture and two selected HFO-based gas mixtures in ATLAS RPCs operated in avalanche mode with a muon beam and no background radiation.

Ref. [\[104\]](#page-166-0) primarily focuses on glass RPCs that closely resemble ours. It conducts a comparative analysis of alternative gas mixtures, each of which contains $SF₆$ and excludes HFC-134a. This study reveals that the overall efficiency is only slightly lower than that of the current mixture, and, notably, indicates a reduc-

- 5 tion in $\langle Q \rangle$ from 80 pC to 25 40 pC. Notably, these test RPCs had a single gas gap, in contrast to the two independently-operated RPCs within one KLM detector panel. Thus, the equivalent two-gap efficiency of the test RPCs would have been $\varepsilon_2 = 1 - (1 - \varepsilon_1)^2$. Recent advancements in front-end electronics might enhance the overall performance significantly.
- ¹⁰ The R&D task here is to find a suitable gas mixture and operating point for the high voltage for our RPCs in avalanche mode to ensure high efficiency and low streamer probability.

6.2.3.3 Readout electronics

A corollary of the switch to avalanche-mode operation, with its much smaller $15 \langle Q \rangle$, is the need for front-end preamplification of the signals as close as feasible to their sources. The new preamplifiers would be placed at or near the ribboncable connectors at the forward and backward ends of the barrel yoke. The preamplified signals would then be routed along the existing meters-long ribbon cables to the digitization front-end electronics located on the magnet-yoke ²⁰ periphery.

The readout end of the ϕ -measuring strips inside the detector panel are very close to these ribbon-cable connectors. In contrast, the z -measuring strips are located between 4 and 220 cm from these connectors and so their signals are

propagated along interior ribbon cables to the external connectors. Any noise pickup and/or crosstalk on these internal cables would be unavoidable.

The initial focus of our R&D will involve measuring the existing electronic noise levels for the ϕ- and z-measuring strips when operating selected *in situ* ⁵ RPCs in avalanche mode. The signal height is expected to be approximately four to five times smaller than that in streamer mode.

With a robust characterization of the avalanche-mode signal and noise pulses, subsequent investigations will determine the options for the signal-processing chain, including at least a preamplifier stage but also, perhaps, incorporating

- ¹⁰ the digitization step into a unified readout solution. Several options are under consideration: preamplification plus continued use of the existing binary digitizers; integrated preamplification and binary digitization; preamplification and fine-grained pulse-height digitization (either integrated or separate); and pramplification with waveform digitization as is done in the present scintillator ¹⁵ front-end readout (either integrated or separate). The challenge in each option
- is to find sufficient volume in the constricted and fully-allocated space at each end of the barrel yoke to add the preamplifiers.

Fig. [6.11](#page-122-0) from the ATLAS collaboration demonstrates the performance of their newly designed SiGe preamplifier [\[112\]](#page-167-1), indicating that it achieves a 95% ²⁰ efficiency with a signal height as low as $\langle Q \rangle = 2 pC$, significantly improving upon the earlier solution that required $9\,\mathrm{pC}$ and resulting in a markedly higher

rate capability.

Figure 6.11: Total Charge versus Effective High Voltage (HVeff), highlighting the point at 90% efficiency. Depicted in the graph are different data sets: black represents No Front End (FE), blue represents Silicon Front End (Si FE), and red represents Silicon Germanium Front End (SiGe FE). [\[112\]](#page-167-1)

The KLM RPCs exhibit a bulk resistivity approximately three orders of magnitude higher than the ATLAS RPCs, resulting in a rate capability roughly three

orders of magnitude lower. Nevertheless, with a similar upgrade approach, we have the potential to increase the KLM rate capability to approximately $10 \,\mathrm{Hz/cm}^2$, a level that adequately accommodates the expected background rates at design luminosity, even when considering the uncertainties discussed in the ₅ introduction.

6.2.3.4 R&D

Upgrading the current RPC system of the KLM detector presents a significant challenge, particularly as numerous detector components are immovable and unalterable. Consequently, it is essential to characterize the existing electronic ¹⁰ noise within the system to determine the detailed design of a preamplifier that would operate well with the RPCs in avalanche mode. A few spare unused fullsize RPC detector panels are available for these R&D studies, including investigations of optimal gas mixtures with lower-voltage operating points and evaluation of prototype pre-amplifiers. If necessary, we could use compact radioactive ¹⁵ sources to create a radiation environment with an incident flux of $1-10 \text{ Hz/cm}^2$.

Nevertheless, dedicated test-beam studies will be required for comprehensive assessments.

The RPC avalanche mode upgrade encompasses several key areas of research and development (R&D). Firstly, the investigation into the detector itself is cru-

- ²⁰ cial, involving studies on various gas mixtures to validate results referenced in literature. To accomplish this, a dedicated laboratory setup using spare RPCs is essential, allowing comprehensive testing under diverse gas mixtures, bias voltages, and radiation environments. Another significant area of study focuses on the front-end electronics, as reducing the charge generated per event might ren-
- ²⁵ der signals too weak for current digitization cards. Therefore, exploration of low-noise preamplifiers becomes necessary, inspired by successful implementations within the ATLAS community. Determining the parameters for future RPC preamplifiers is pivotal in ensuring compatibility with existing digitization cards. Additionally, investigating the detector's gas system is vital, considering the cur-
- ³⁰ rent venting of detector gas into the atmosphere. Developing a gas recirculation system, potentially inspired by practices in the ATLAS community, might be necessary based on the determined gas mixture, aiming to enhance operational efficiency and mitigate environmental concerns.

6.2.3.5 Cost estimation and risk assessment

- ³⁵ At its early stages, this upgrade proposal heavily relies on substantial R&D efforts for viability. Compared to the alternative proposal focusing on entirely new BKLM detectors, this approach primarily emphasizes upgrading the existing BKLM detector, making it notably more cost-effective. Precise cost estimations are challenging without further R&D, but significant material costs outlined in
- ⁴⁰ the previous chapter, around 9.6 M\$, would be eliminated. The proposed hardware additions primarily include preamplifiers and potentially a gas recirculation system, only if it proves more cost-effective than the current venting setup. This indicates potential operational cost reduction compared to the current detector

configuration, making it a promising avenue for upgrade.

For a preliminary cost estimate, it is assumed that each preamplifier costs approximately \$30, and there is an estimated need for preamplifying roughly 16,000 channels. This results in a cost estimate of around \$0.5 million.

⁵ The risks associated with this upgrade can be categorized into two parts. Firstly, there's the concern regarding the feasibility of the upgrade itself. Earlystage research and development (R&D) can help determine the feasibility of the upgrade. In case it is not achievable, the possibility remains to continue operating with the current setup or, if there's sufficient time, switch to a full scintillator 10 readout.

Secondly, the risk of damaging the subdetector or adjacent subdetectors exists. Access to the detector itself is minimal, reducing the likelihood of damaging adjacent subdetectors. Introducing a new gas mixture to the RPC chambers poses a potential risk, but this can be mitigated by careful consideration during ¹⁵ the R&D phase.

Overall, the risk of ending up with a non-functional detector after the upgrade is minimal. Additionally, the risk of damaging surrounding detectors is low since the detector remains stationary during the upgrade process.

Chapter 7

Software, Trigger, DAQ

7.1 Software, machine learning, AI

Editor: *T.Kuhr*

⁵ The software for the simulation, reconstruction, and analysis of the data from the upgraded detector will be an evolution of the current Belle II software, basf2 [\[11,](#page-157-0) [49\]](#page-161-0). Nevertheless, substantial improvements are required to cope with the increased data rate, occupancy, and background level. On the one hand this challenge has to be addressed by algorithmic improvements that find a ¹⁰ good balance between computing and physics performance. On the other hand new technologies provide various opportunities for software enhancements.

So far the Belle II software only runs on x86 architectures. First attempts were made to port it to the ARM architecture which may result in a more energy efficient execution. A large potential is expected from delegating compute-intense ¹⁵ tasks to GPU resources. This requires a porting of algorithms to GPU architectures, an adjustment of the software framework to run on heterogeneous com-

- puting resources, and their integration in the distributed computing system. GPU resources are also essential for the training of large machine learning models.
- Machine Learning (ML) and Artificial Intelligence (AI) are another prime ex-²⁰ ample of a new technology with huge potential. Already now AI algorithms are used at Belle or are under development. ML applications at trigger level are described in Section [4.3.1.](#page-67-0) A prominent ML application example in the offline software is the Full Event Interpretation (FEI) [\[73\]](#page-163-0).
- Generative ML models are a promising technology to reduce the resource ²⁵ demand of simulations. Currently a non-negligible part of resources is needed for an accurate simulation of beam background hits in the detector. For this task random trigger data is taken and overlayed to simulated signal hits. It requires DAQ bandwidth, storage resources, and a distribution to MC production sites. This can be avoided by generating the background hits on-the-fly with a ³⁰ generative model.

Such an approach is most beneficial for detectors with large readout windows and thus large beam background overlay event sizes. This is currently the case for the PXD and the ECL. It could be shown, that the effect of PXD background on the track reconstruction can be reproduced with background generated by a

Generative Adversarial Network (GAN) architecture with newly developed extensions [\[113\]](#page-167-2). GANs are also studied for the simulation of ECL waveforms. A challenge that still has to be addressed is the generation of correlated background in different parts of the detector.

- 5 A complementary approach to the beam background is to reduce it as much as possible. This requires a good understanding of the accelerator conditions that lead to the various types backgrounds. Such an understanding was achieved by a neural network trained on diagnostic data from SuperKEK and Belle II [\[114\]](#page-167-3). The model can be used to analyze the background composition of recorded data ¹⁰ and to predict background levels. The latter could be used to optimize the run-
- ning conditions.

In general, AI has revolutionized how things are done in many areas. Problems of classification, optimization, and generation are nowadays often tackled by AI methods. Their potential is not yet fully exploited in particle physics in

¹⁵ general and Belle II in particular. And the development is still ongoing rapidly. For example, Large Language Models (LLMs) may help to develop better physics algorithms, design more robust analyses, or write documentation and papers with fewer effort. These are examples of areas that should be explored in the context of a Belle II Detector Upgrade.

²⁰ **7.2 Trigger**

Editor: *T.Koga*

7.2.1 Introduction

The hardware trigger system (TRG) was designed to satisfy the following requirements at the nominal design luminosity:

- ²⁵ high efficiency for hadronic events from $\Gamma(4S) \rightarrow B\bar{B}$ and from continuum
	- a maximum average trigger rate of 30 kHz
	- a fixed latency of 4.5 μ s
	- a timing precision of less than 10 ns
	- a trigger configuration that is flexible and robust
- ³⁰ Figure [7.1](#page-127-0) shows an overview of the system. The CDC and ECL take a major role to trigger charged particles and photons. The KLM triggers muons and the TOP measures event timing precisely. The information from sub detector triggers are send to the Global Reconstruction Logic (GRL) for the matching and the final trigger decision is made at the Global Decision Logic (GDL). Although TRG has
- ³⁵ been developed following the original design, further upgrades are needed to satisfy the requirements with the nominal design luminosity, due to the higher beam originated background rate than the initial expectation. In addition, it is important to keep high efficiency of the non-B physics with low multiplicity of the final state particles, such as physics with tau, dilepton, and dark/new
- ⁴⁰ particles searches. In order to achieve that, several upgrades are planned for both hardware and firmware with various time schedules.

Figure 7.1: *Schematic view of the hardware trigger system*

7.2.2 Hardware upgrade

7.2.2.1 Universal trigger board

TRG consists of several kinds of FPGA based electronic circuit board. Each board has optical transceiver to communicate with other boards and the detector front ⁵ end boards. The universal trigger board (UT) has been commonly developed for all sub trigger system to implement core trigger logic, as shown in Table [7.1.](#page-128-0) Upgrade of the UT is on-going to improve the resource size of the FPGA and the optical transmission rate, in order to implement more complicated trigger logic with increased information from the detector. At present, the 3rd (UT3) and 4th

- ¹⁰ (UT4) generation of the boards are used for the physics operation. The number of UT4 is planned to be increased in the short and medium term. Development and production of the next generation of the UT (UT5) are scheduled in the medium and long term. A high-end FPGA, Xilinx Varsal, is used for UT5 to implement machine learning based logic with large DSP and AI engine. UT5 is
- ¹⁵ being developed at KEK with cooperation of Belle II, ATLAS in Japan, and KEK electronics group via collider electronics forum, for not only Belle II but also for any collider experiments.

7.2.2.2 CDCTRG upgrade with CDC front end board

CDC front end board and CDCTRG system will be upgraded around 2026. Band-²⁰ width of the optical transceiver of the front end board is increased from 3Gbps to 10Gbps in order to send TDC and ADC of all wires to the trigger system, as shown in Table [7.2](#page-128-1) and Fig[/7.2.](#page-128-2) The most upstream board of CDCTRG, Merger board, is upgraded to UT4 to increase bandwidth of the receiver. All CDCTRG firmware will be updated with the TDC and ADC, in order to improve tracking

²⁵ and background rejection performances. The expected performance improvement is studied by simulation, including upgrade of tracking logic with machine learning. The vertex resolution is expected to be improved from 10 cm to 5 cm,

Table 7.1: Specification of the universal trigger boards.

Figure 7.2: Wires used for present(red) and new(yellow) tracking algorithm.

with 50% trigger rate reduction[\[115\]](#page-167-4), as shown in Fig. [7.3.](#page-129-0) Production of UT4 has been started.

Table 7.2: Information send from CDC front end board to TRG.

	present	new	
existence of wire hit \vert 80% of all wires all wires			
hit timing (TDC)	17% of all wires all wires		
charge (ADC)	not sent	all wires	

7.2.2.3 ECLTRG upgrade

At present, analogue sum of 16 crystals (Trigger cell, TC) are used as a mini-⁵ mum unit of ECLTRG to measure energy deposit in the calorimeter. Upgrade of shaper+DSP and ECLTRG boards is considered in order to divide the analogue readout from each crystal. Background rejection performance is expected to be improved by measuring vertex of the photon with the cluster shape, like ratio of the energy deposit between centered and outer crystals in a cluster. At offline

Figure 7.3: Expected improvements of signal efficiency and background rejection rate. Blue is present logic and the others are new logic with several machine learning architecture.

analysis, 30% background photon rejection has been achieved by using the cluster shape, and similar improvement is expected to the ECLTRG trigger rate. In addition, signal efficiency is expected to be improved by reducing pile up effects, when two daughter particles are close to each others within 20–40 cm on the ⁵ ECL surface. Simulation study is on-going to evaluate the expected performance quantitatively and fix the initial design.

7.2.2.4 VXDTRG with VXD detector upgrade

At present, PXD and SVD have no functionality to provide trigger signal. With the VXD upgrade, vertex trigger will be implemented in order to reject beam ¹⁰ background outside interaction point and reduce trigger rate. Design of the new trigger logic and performance evaluation are done based on simulation with a Thin Fine-Pitch SVD sensor scenario [\[116\]](#page-167-5). From detector front end, existence of OR hits in multiple channels (0.6-1.0 cm area with 50-80 μ m strip pitches) are sent to UT4 via merger board [7.4.](#page-130-0) On the UT4, track candidates from interaction ¹⁵ points are selected, by requiring 3 of 4 layer hits with expected hit pattern saved on FPGA with a look up table. As shown in Fig. [7.5,](#page-130-1) 1-2 cm vertex resolution is achieved with 95% tracking efficiency and a few percent fake trigger proba-

²⁰ several VXD scenario.

7.2.3 Firmware upgrade

In order to improve signal efficiency and background rejection, several firmware upgrades are planned with the upgraded hardware, as shown in Table [7.3.](#page-132-0) Because the firmware modification can be done at anytime with FPGA, the plan can

bility. By taking matching with CDCTRG track, trigger rate coming from beam background can be rejected more than 90%. Similar studies are on-going with

Figure 7.4: Over view of the VXD trigger system with a Thin Fine-Pitch SVD sensor scenario.

Figure 7.5: Expected trigger efficiency of VXDTRG along with vertex Z position of simulated particles.

be changed flexibly depending on superkekb machine condition, physics discovery, performance of new logic, new idea of core logic and human resources etc. For each upgrade component, one or two full time workers are needed as the human resource.

7.3 DAQ

Editor: *S.Yamada*

7.3.1 Optically connected trigger timing distribution system

The Belle II data acquisition system incorporates a trigger and timing distribu-⁵ tion (TTD) system, which distributes the system clock, trigger signal, and related signals for synchronization and control to both front-end electronics and readout electronics boards. This system is designed to collect error, busy, and other status signals from these electronics devices to monitor the data taking status and pause the trigger distribution when necessary to prevent recording

- ¹⁰ corrupted data. A schematic view of the TTD system as a part of the DAQ system is shown in Fig. [7.6.](#page-134-0) The TTD system consists of a hierarchical structure of signal distribution modules of the two-slot-wide 6U VME form factor called FTSW (Front-end Timing Switch). For the communication between modules, a custom protocol called b2tt was developed and utilized. The current connec-
- ¹⁵ tions between FTSW modules and between the FTSW and front-end / readout devices are mostly made over a CAT7 network cables using the RJ45 ports of the FTSW. For longer transfer distances, optical fiber connections with a limited number of SFP transceivers are also used with a daughter card attached onto the FTSW module. In the operation of the Belle II experiment since 2019, how-
- ²⁰ ever, we experienced that sometimes the b2tt link via some of the CAT7 cables between FTSWs and electronics modules gets lost due to signal glitches, most likely due to external electromagnetic interference (EMI). The problem does not happen in the connection between FTSWs within the same VME crate, or in the optical connections. When the b2tt link is lost, data acquisition stops, causing a ²⁵ non-negligible loss in the data acquisition efficiency.

In order to prevent this issue and establish a more EMI-tolerant TTD system, a transition to more extensive use of the optical interconnection is planned. To increase the number of optical connections, it is essential to develop a new version of the FTSW module (FTSW4), which is capable to connect to a sufficiently

- ³⁰ large number of destinations via optical fibers. The new FTSW4 module is also designed for the trigger timing distribution to the newly designed CDC frontend boards, which will receive the b2tt signals over optical fibers. The large number of the CDC boards demand the FTSW4 to have a high channel density. Among the possible choices of the high density transceivers, we decided to adopt
- ³⁵ the QSFP transceivers, which has a moderate channel density but is highly costeffective. The board design we adopt is a two-slot-wide 6U VME module on which QSFP transceivers are mounted on both sides of the board as shown in Fig. [7.7.](#page-135-0) Equipped with 12 QSFP transceivers for trigger timing distribution and two more QSFP transceivers for uplink and other purposes, the FTSW4 mod-
- ⁴⁰ ule is capable to connect up to 24 front-end electronics or readout boards, with each connection using two pairs of optical fibers. Additionally, it has six RJ45 ports for conventional CAT7 cable connections. The trigger timing distribution is controlled using a cost-effective Artix 7 FPGA.

Figure 7.6: Schematic view of the Belle II DAQ system

Figure 7.7: Conceptual drawing of the FTSW4 module

	FY2023	FY2024	FY2025
prototype	2 module		
mass production			20(?) modules 20(?) modules

Table 7.4: Schedule of the production of the FTSW4 modules

The upgrade project is scheduled as follows: The first two prototype modules will be manufactured in FY2023. Following successful testing of the prototype module, mass production is set to occur in FY2024 and FY2025, aiming to produce about 40 modules, to cover the connections inside the E-hut and the ⁵ connections to the newly designed CDC front-end readout boards (Table. [7.4\)](#page-136-0).

7.3.2 Improvement of throughput in readout system

The functionalities of the readout system [\[117\]](#page-167-6) are receiving data from frontend electronics boards and performing partial event-building and a basic sanity check of data. The Belle II DAQ system has a common readout interface with 10 front-end electronics (FEE) of all sub-detectors except for PXD, which needs special data-treatment for online data-reduction. At the beginning of the Belle II experiment, we used a COPPER board [?], on which we attached newly developed receiver cards, a CPU card, and an interface board with the TTD system. However, since it becomes difficult to maintain a COPPER board itself, which has

¹⁵ been used from the previous Belle experiment and its technology, PCI bus and Gigabit Ethernet is somewhat, obsolete, we decided to replace the current readout system with state-of-the-art technology. Since electronics boards with such functionalities were already under development in other physics experiments for the basically same purpose, we decided to use a PCIe40 board[\[88\]](#page-164-0), which was ²⁰ originally developed for the LHCb and ALICE experiments.

A PCIe40 board is equipped with Intel Arria10 FPGA with 48 bi-directional serial links and 16 lanes of PCIExpress 3.0 for I/O interfaces. With the much larger number of 15 links per board compared with a COPPER board, which has 4, we can make a more compact readout system with PCIe40 boards. We then concen-

²⁵ trated on the developments of firmware and software to make the hardware fit in with the Belle II DAQ system. The firmware of the new PCIe40-based system takes care of formatting and data checks which has been done by the software on CPU board in the COPPER system. Those formatted data are read by software running on the host server of a PCIe40 board and are distributed to different

³⁰ HLT units for online data reduction. After implementing those functionalities in the new hardware, we performed a high-trigger-rate test with dummy data and achieved the throughput of 3.4GB/s per one PCIe40 board up to a readout PC.

The replacement has been completed in the LS1. Although the upgraded system can handle the 30kHz trigger rate, which is the designed rate for Belle II,

³⁵ in case of unexpectedly high beam background occurs as luminosity increases in Run2, we will consider further upgrade of the readout hardware. One candidate for the hardware is PCIe400 board[\[118\]](#page-167-7), which is an upgrade version of the PCIe40 board, where development is ongoing in the LHCb collabora-

tion targeting the LHC-LS3 upgrade. While still in the design phase, the new board will provide enhanced capabilities, supporting higher bandwidth with a host server adopting newer technologies such as PCI Express Gen 5.0 and the latest FPGA. This will enable greater data-processing capacity and transceiver ⁵ capabilities with increased bandwidth. Similar to the approach taken with the implementation of the PCIe40 board, our focus will be on firmware and software development to integrate it with the Belle II DAQ system.

7.3.3 Increase of computational power in HLT system

The HLT system [8] of the Belle II DAQ system performs an online event re-¹⁰ construction and issues a software trigger to reduce the number of events to be recorded on disks, which is necessary to save offline computing resources with the minimum effect on signal efficiency. The HLT system also sends regionof-interest (ROI) information the PXD readout system, which is calculated by extrapolating a track obtained from other sub-detectors' data. PXD data of the

- ¹⁵ outside of the ROI can be discarded, as they are unlikely to contain hits of signal tracks. For these purposes, the HLT system collects event-fragments from all-subdetectors except for PXD and performs online event reconstruction after event-building [9] is done, which requires powerful computational power and high network throughput. Like the readout system, the throughput requirement
- ²⁰ for the HLT system also gradually increases with the luminosity of the SuperKEKB accelerator. In addition to the luminosity, the beam background, which is difficult to predict precisely at the beginning of the experiment, can also affect trigger rate and event size. Considering that, we adopted a staging plan of the reinforcement of the HLT system to keep up with increasing trigger rate and event size.
- ²⁵ With this staging plan, we can also benefit from the evolution of information technology to prepare computational resources with higher performance at a later stage.

To make the staging plan possible, the HLT system was designed to be a scalable system, consisting of multiple units, which can work somewhat in par-³⁰ allel, and adding other units will increase the total throughput of the system linearly. An HLT unit consisting of servers and network switches is stored in one rack and performs event building and online data reduction independently of other units. In the HLT unit, there are an input server, worker nodes and an output server. The input server receives event fragments from the read-out sys-

- ³⁵ tem, builds events, and sends them to worker nodes, which perform online event reconstruction. Since the online reconstruction of an event can be done independently of other events, events which are built in the input server are distributed to different worker servers to perform online reconstruction in parallel. On each worker server, there are multiple reconstruction processes running for parallel
- ⁴⁰ data-processing to make use of multiple cores in the server. Event selection is performed here with reconstructed information and events which do not meet high-level trigger conditions are discarded. The output server then sends raw data with track and cluster information to a storage system, which is dedicated for recording data only from a specific HLT unit.

		2019 2020 2023 2024 2025	
number of CPU cores 2880 4800 6212 6682 7172			

Table 7.5: Schedule of the reinforcement of HLT system

From the start of the Belle II experiment, we gradually increased the number of HLT units and number of CPU cores in each HLT unit. In 2019, 10 HLT units were in operation with 2800 CPU cores in total and in the winter shutdown in 2020-2021, the total number of CPU cores was increased to 4800. With this ⁵ computational power, reconstruction software can currently handle data at the

- Level-1 trigger rate of around 15 kHz before LS1. In the LS1 period, we installed three more HLT units and the total number of CPU cores in the HLT system reached 6212, we estimate that the HLT system can process data up to the trigger rate of 20kHz.
- ¹⁰ Since the current performance does not reach the designed rate of 30kHz for the Belle II DAQ system, we will continue adding more CPUs to the HLT system. The next reinforcement plan is to add another HLT unit in 2024. After the Run2 starts, we will closely monitor the increase in trigger rates and event size as the luminosity increases and add more HLT units if necessary. In addition to simply
- ¹⁵ scaling up the CPU processing power, we plan to explore the implementation of heterogeneous computing in the online reconstruction within HLT. Currently, the same reconstruction software used for offline analysis has been used for the online reconsruction, which is running only on CPU but offloading tracking or clustering algorithm to GPU or FPGA could be a viable option.

²⁰ **7.3.4 Study for triggerless DAQ**

Currently, the front-end electronics of each sub-detector receives Level-1 triggers from the TTD system to determine which data to send to the backend DAQ system. This scheme can control the throughput from the front-end electronics and reduce the workload of the back-end DAQ system. However, since the

- ²⁵ Level-1 trigger of the Belle II system is produced by an FPGA-based system with limited information, there is potential to enhance the event selection efficiency by sending all data without Level-1 trigger to the backend system to execute event selection using comprehensive detector information and sophisticated reconstruction programs primarily handled by software. While the Belle II Level-1
- ³⁰ trigger achieves nearly 100% efficiency for a BBbar event, triggerless DAQ could be more beneficial for searching for more exotic events such as those with a displaced vertices and low-multiplicity events where there are a lot of background hits.

Besides handling the increased throughput resulting from the removal of the ³⁵ Level-1 trigger, which requires reinforcements in both the readout and HLT systems, a substantial upgrade in the software framework of the DAQ system is also necessary as shown in Fig[.7.8](#page-139-0) Since no trigger information is available, timestamp information becomes essential for event-building without the Level-1 trigger. For the purpose, the front-end electronics are required to add the timing

Figure 7.8: Data handling in triggerless DAQ

information to hits or waveform data. This information will consists of coarse timing distributed by the TTD system and fine timing information generated internally by the front-end electronics. Subsequently, the front-end electronics transmit all hits or waveform data to backend PC farms with the timing infor-

⁵ mation. At the backend DAQ system, software is employed to merge data from different front-end electronics boards by using the timing information attached in data. The software trigger will first examines a potential event time window using algorithms like track finding. Once the time window is determined, a detailed reconstruction process takes place. The selected events will subsequently ¹⁰ be stored in a storage system for offline analysis.

Eliminating the Level-1 trigger and sending all data to the back-end DAQ system also requires increased throghput capabilities for front-end electronics boards of each sub-detector. With the exception of PXD, the current front-end electronics for other sub-detectors find it difficult to adopt trigger-less readout.

- 15 Therefore, for the implementation of triggerless DAQ, we should consider a staging approach, such as introducing triggerless readout first for specific subdetectors, which has enough capability of the increase throughput. In such scenarios, in addition to the normal data processing using the Level-1 trigger, additional online analysis will be conducted on data obtained from certain sub-
- ²⁰ detector's data with the triggerless readouts. In addition to the development of the software framework, a feasibility study for the the front-end electronics and back-end DAQ for higher throughput is currently ongoing.

Chapter 8

Beam Polarization and Chiral Belle

Editor: *J.M. Roney*

8.1 Introduction and physics motivation

- ⁵ Upgrading SuperKEKB with polarized electron beams in the high energy ring (HER) opens a new and unique program of precision physics at a center-of-mass energy of 10.58 GeV. We summarize here the physics potential of this 'Chiral Belle' program and corresponding technical requirements needed to achieve the goals and a brief summary of the conceptual design of the requisite new hard-
- ¹⁰ ware needed for the upgrade. These were introduced in the Snowmass White Paper on upgrading SuperKEKB with a polarized electron beam [\[119\]](#page-167-8). A separate Conceptual Design Report on the Chiral Belle Beam Polarization Upgrade Project is being written and this section summarizes that work.
- Unique and powerful sensitivities to new physics via precision neutral cur-¹⁵ rent measurements at 10 GeV are enabled by upgrading SuperKEKB to have polarized electron beams. With a measurement of $\sin^2\theta_W$ having a precision comparable to the current world-average Z^0 -pole value, but at 10 GeV, Chiral Belle will be uniquely sensitive to the presence of dark sector parity violating bosons with masses below the Z^0 . Moreover, it would be the only facility able to
- ²⁰ probe neutral current universality relations between charm and beauty quarks and all three charged leptons at energies below the Z^0 pole and would measure ratios of neutral current couplings with unprecedentedly high precision. As all of these measurements are accurately predicted in the Standard Model, any deviations would be signatures of physics beyond the Standard Model to which only
- 25 Chiral Belle would be sensitive for the foreseeable future. The τ -pairs produced with polarized beams will also provide the only means to measure the thirdgeneration $g - 2$ at a precision that can begin to approach the $\mathcal{O}(10^{-6})$ level, the equivalent of the muon $g-2$ anomaly scaled by $(m_{\tau}/m_{\mu})^2$ as expected in Minimal Flavor Violation scenarios. With 40 ab⁻¹, a measurement at the 10^{-5} level
- 30 is possible and to reach $\mathcal{O}(10^{-6})$ will require more statistics as well as improved measurements of m_{τ} and $m_{\Upsilon(1S)}$. The Chiral Belle physics program also includes precision τ EDM measurements and QCD hadronization studies as well as substantial improvements to the sensitivities of lepton flavor violation searches in τ

decays, and τ Michel parameter measurements.

8.2 Requirements

In order to implement e^- beam polarization in the SuperKEKB HER, three hardware upgrades are required:

⁵ 1) introduction of a low-emittance polarized source that supplies SuperKEKB with transversely polarized electrons with separate data sets having opposite polarization states;

2) a system of spin rotator magnets that rotate the spin of the electrons in the beam to be longitudinal before the interaction point (IP) where the Belle II de-

¹⁰ tector is located, and then back to transversely polarized after the IP, as depicted in Figure [8.1;](#page-141-0) and

3) a Compton polarimeter that provides online measurements of the beam polarization at a location between the first spin rotator and the IP. A precision measurement of the polarization is also made at the IP by analysing the spin-

¹⁵ dependent decay kinematics of τ leptons produced in an $e^+e^- \to \tau^+\tau^-$ data set, which gives Chiral Belle a unique way of controlling the systematic uncertainties on the beam polarization.

Figure 8.1: The spin motion of the electron in the HER with the spin rotators installed.

The development work on a polarized source is underway and is a hardware project that has many synergies with the polarized source work currently ²⁰ being undertaken for the Electron Ion Collider project at Brookhaven National Lab in the United States. The helicity of the electrons is to be changed for different bunch trains by controlling the circular polarization of the source laser illuminating a GaAs photocathode, similar to that which was used for the SLC polarized source. The electrons circulating in the HER are required to be trans-

²⁵ versely (i.e. vertically) polarized, as depicted in Figure [8.1.](#page-141-0) Since the electrons emitted from the photocathode are longitudinally polarized, there must be a spin rotator immediately after photocathode, such as that provided by a Wien filter,

that ensures transversely polarized electrons are injected into the linac supplying the HER beam. Spin tracking studies from the source, through the linac and injector lattice, show that the transversely polarized state of the electrons will be preserved when injected into the HER. Multiparticle long term tracking stud-⁵ ies have shown that electrons injected with transverse polarization will maintain that polarization in the HER with a polarization lifetime of many hours.

The challenging problem of providing a spin rotator in the SuperKEKB HER that is transparent to the rest of the HER lattice can be solved in a manner that minimizes disruptions to the existing lattice and that easily permits the possible

- ¹⁰ operation of the HER without any spin rotator magnet fields. The solution, proposed by Uli Wienands (Argonne National Laboratory), uses compact combined function magnets consisting of a dipole, a solenoid and a system of six skewquadrupole fields, as depicted in Figure [8.2.](#page-142-0) It can be implemented in the HER by using four compact combined function magnets, two on either side of the IP.
- ¹⁵ These would simply physically replace existing dipole magnets currently in the present lattice. Frequency Map Analysis dynamic aperture studies, Figure [8.3,](#page-143-0) demonstrate the feasibility of this design. Furthermore, long term tracking studies, which include radiation damping and radiation fluctuations/quantum excitation effects, have explored non-linear features of beam lifetime and polarization
- ²⁰ lifetime. These studies demonstrate that sufficiently long beam and polarization lifetimes can be achieved and confirm the viability of this particular spin rotator concept.

Figure 8.2: The Wienands concept for a compact combined function spin rotator unit with overlaid dipole, solenoid and skew-quadrupole superconducting coil fields.

Solutions for implementing a Compton polarimeter have been found where the polarimeter is located in a place that minimizes any disruptions to the exist-²⁵ ing lattice as described in reference [\[120\]](#page-167-9) and can achieve polarization measurements with systematic uncertainties at the 0.5% level. Unique to the Chiral Belle program is the additional means of measuring the beam polarization at the IP using τ pair events with a relative systematic uncertainty of 0.4%, as described in [\[121\]](#page-167-10), a paper describing the technique and evaluating the statistical and sys-

 $_3$ tematic uncertainties using PEP-II e^+e^- collision data collected with the BaBar detector at the $\Upsilon(4S)$ center-of-mass energy.

Figure 8.3: Frequency Map Analysis for the current HER lattice (left) and for the HER lattice with four compact combined function spin rotator magnets installed (right) demonstrate that spin rotators can be implemented in a manner that is transparent to the rest of the lattice. This is further confirmed with long term tracking studies, as described in the text.

8.3 Implementation planning

The next steps in the Chiral Belle project involve completing the Conceptual Design Report on the Chiral Belle Beam Polarization Upgrade Project after which R&D on the hardware components, including prototypes, will converge on the

- ⁵ Technical Design and cost estimates. The capital costs for the polarization upgrade are expected to be substantially less than half of the annual power costs of operating the SuperKEKB accelerator. It can also be expected that a significant fraction of those capital costs will be provided by non-Japanese groups on Belle II.
- ¹⁰ A proposal to measure the lifetime of the transverse polarization in the HER is currently being prepared, where a polarized source will inject transversely polarized electrons and the polarization lifetime measured using the Touschek effect, as is done in resonant depolarization measurements. This would be a dedicated experiment of a few days duration and serve to validate the long term tracking
- ¹⁵ studies that predict a spin lifetime that is much greater than the HER top-up rate. This Touschek-Polarization Experiment would be conducted in parallel with the other work required for the Technical Design Report.

It is feasible to plan for the upgrade to commence towards the end of this decade using the next long shutdown and possibly a number of summer shut-²⁰ downs. In such a scenario, the polarization program could begin while SuperKEKB completes its program of delivering 50 ab⁻¹ of data to Belle II and continued beyond that program.
Chapter 9

Longer Term Upgrades

9.1 ARICH

Editor: *R.Pestotnik*

⁵ **9.1.1 Introduction**

The Aerogel RICH particle identification subsystem (ARICH) located in a perpendicular 1.5 T magnetic field in front of an electromagnetic calorimeter consists of three key elements: aerogel radiator plane, photon detector plane with single photon sensors, and front-end readout electronics. Cherenkov photons emitted

- ¹⁰ in the 4 cm aerogel radiator are propagated through a 16 cm expansion gap and detected on the photon detector consisting of Hybrid Avalanche Photo-detectors (HAPD) produced by Hamamatsu [\[122\]](#page-167-0). The HAPD is a hybrid vacuum photon detector consisting of an entrance window with a bi-alkali photo-cathode with a 28% peak quantum efficiency and four segmented avalanche photo-diodes in
- ¹⁵ proximity focusing configuration. 420 HAPD sensors with 144 channels are mounted in seven concentric rings surrounding the beam pipe in the forward end-cap region of the spectrometer. The ARICH was designed to operate up to the nominal design luminosity of 8×10^{35} cm⁻² s⁻¹. Due to high background environments, its operation poses new challenges when the Belle II operation is
- ²⁰ extended beyond the design luminosity. At high luminosity, the neutron background radiation and gamma radiation levels increase. They can affect the functionality of all detector components.

The silica aerogel is produced in a supercritical drying process and is not affected by the irradiation [\[123\]](#page-168-0). Its performance was measured during the ²⁵ irradiation with a dose of 98 kGy, and no significant degradation was found.

HAPDs, however, are sensitive to gamma and neutron irradiation. Different modifications in the APD structure have been implemented during the sensor's development. Different designs have been tested, including the insertion of a film on the active area and different thicknesses of the $p+$ layer. The design

³⁰ with an intermediate electrode, a thin p+ layer, and a film on the active area was finally selected for ARICH. The HAPD was demonstrated to work up to the design luminosity but not after its $5 \times$ longer-term upgrade [\[124\]](#page-168-1). Also, due to

its high Boron content introduced during the chip production, a Xilinx Spartan-6 FPGA, part of the front-end electronics board, is prone to single event upsets. By using a custom FPGA memory scrubbing [\[125\]](#page-168-2) and triple redundancy logic, we can operate the electronics in the short and mid-term.

⁵ We have already started investigating different possible upgrade scenarios for the long-term upgrade, focusing on the possible photon detector candidates.

9.1.2 Photon detector candidates

The choice of photon detectors capable of operating in the magnetic field of 1.5 T is limited to several different technologies, which we already considered ¹⁰ during the R&D of the current photo-detector [\[126,](#page-168-3) [127\]](#page-168-4). The HAPD, produced by Hamamatsu Photonics, is no longer a viable option as the HAPD production line has been disassembled after the sensor production.

9.1.2.1 Silicon photo-multipliers

The first technology is silicon photomultipliers, which have several advantages ¹⁵ over hybrid avalanche photo-detectors. They have a very high photon detector efficiency, reaching 60% at the peak. They are very easy to operate as they only require reverse biasing from 30 to 70 V, much less than standard or hybrid vacuum detectors. In addition, they have a very good timing resolution, which opens new possibilities for particle identification in ARICH. As semiconductor ²⁰ devices, they are inherently insensitive to magnetic fields.

They have, however, several drawbacks. First is the large dark count rate. Even more problematic is their sensitivity to radiation, which was a limiting factor a decade ago when selecting the photon detector candidates for the current ARICH photon detector.

- ²⁵ The radiation damage increases the sensor currents, affects its breakdown voltage, and increases the dark count rate. The dark counts affect the measurement in two ways. First, their signals cannot be distinguished from single photon ones. As a result, they produce a high background on the detector's plane. The resulting effect on the kaon identification capabilities for different background
- ³⁰ levels can be seen in Fig. [9.1.](#page-147-0) Second, the increase of the dark count rate, proportional to the size of the device, is also responsible for the sensor baseline loss, which happens above $10^{11}~{\rm n}_{eq}/{\rm cm}^2$ or less for small sensitive area (1 mm 2) devices. The limit depends on many factors related to the SiPM design and the operation conditions. The dark count rate increases exponentially with the op-
- ³⁵ erating temperature, and the usability of the silicon photo-multipliers should be tested for each specific application. The baseline loss affects single photon counting much more than silicon photomultipliers in the multi-photon regime, e.g., in calorimetry.

We are following the evolution of the technology and evaluating currently ⁴⁰ available samples. We are also working with the producers to reduce the neutron sensitivity and find the operation parameters where the damage might be under control. We will consider different engineering changes in the electric field design and sensor SPAD size [\[128\]](#page-168-5).

Several techniques can contribute to the operation of Silicon photo-multipliers: the reduction of their operating temperature, the use of timing information for background rejection, the use of a light collection system to reduce the sensorsensitive surface, and the high-temperature annealing. We are studying the re-

⁵ sponse of the silicon photomultipliers at low temperatures and developing multichannel timing electronics to read out the sensors. These developments in silicon photomultipliers aim to demonstrate their capability to measure single photons and reduce the dark count rate to an acceptable level.

In the case of the RICH with the aerogel radiator where neutron fluences of $_{10}$ up to 5×10^{12} n/cm² are expected, the operation at lower temperatures requires the use of an additional cooling system, which introduces more material in front of the electromagnetic calorimeter impacting its performance. The effect must be carefully studied by performing detector response simulations to understand its consequences.

¹⁵ **9.1.2.2 Large area picosecond photo-detector**

The second possible photon detector technology we are considering for the longterm upgrade is micro-channel plate photo-multipliers (MCP-PMT). Compared to silicon photo-multipliers, such sensors have several drawbacks. As they are based on bi-alkali photo-cathodes and suffer from additional collection ineffi-

- ²⁰ ciency, their photon detection efficiency is similar to the current HAPDs, much lower than that of SiPMs. As a vacuum detector with an internal amplification structure, they also suffer from the gain drop in the magnetic field and lifetime issues due to charge collection on the photocathode. In the case of Aerogel RICH, the above drawbacks can be, to a certain extent, mitigated. In the current con-
- ²⁵ figuration, there are gaps between the HAPD detector modules, which can be reduced during the design of the photodetector layout. Also, the gain drop in the case of the perpendicular magnetic field of ARICH is relatively small. Finally, the MCP-PMT lifetime can be extended by operating sensors at a lower gain and by the latest technological advances (atomic layer deposition treatment of the
- ³⁰ MCP structures). Compared to silicon-photomultipliers, the dark count rate of MCP-PMTs is much lower, especially after exposure to neutron irradiation; thus, considering them as a candidate for the future ARICH photon detector is very justified.

MCP-PMT production is, in general, very expensive, apart from the case ³⁵ of the Large Area Picosecond Photodetector (LAPPD) technology, where only inexpensive glass is used in the production process, leading to a significantly lower volume pricing. The LAPPDs, produced by Incom USA, come in two sizes, 20×20 cm² and 10×10 cm². The large size reduces the complexity of the photon detector. Unfortunately, it would introduce additional inactive areas on the

- ⁴⁰ photon detector. A conceptual design layout of the ARICH photon detector plane equipped with LAPPDs is shown in the right plot of Fig. [9.1.](#page-147-0) A version of the devices with capacitively coupled electrodes enables the design of custom readout granularities. We are optimizing the size of the pads and studying possible charge sharing between several pixels, which may impact the operation when
- ⁴⁵ signals from photons start to overlap.

Figure 9.1: (left) Simulated Kaon identification efficiency versus pion misidentification probability at the momentum of 4 GeV/c for various levels of nominal background. Bialkali photocathode was assumed during the simulation. (right) Conceptual layout of ARICH photon detector plane populated with 20×20 cm² and 10×10 cm² LAPPDs.

9.1.3 Sensor read-out electronics

Both possible sensors require reading out the signals in a narrow time window of several ns concerning the trigger signal, requiring optimized internal design and high integration with the read-out electronics at the back side of the sen-⁵ sor. We are studying two potential front-end chip options. The first is based on upgrading the current ASIC used for Hybrid avalanche photo-diodes [\[129\]](#page-168-6). The chip has been designed; the first samples are currently under functional tests. This option allows the use of a proven technology; however, it is not yet demonstrated how it will handle high dark count rates. The second option uses novel ¹⁰ FastIC ASIC, featuring low noise fast timing capabilities, developed in collaboration with CERN and the University of Barcelona [\[130\]](#page-168-7). As the new ASIC will be used in the coming upgrades of the LHC experiments, the synergies in common development (e.g., with LHCb RICH) are expected to reduce the development

¹⁵ **9.1.4 Radiator**

costs and commissioning time.

A study has already been launched to estimate the possible gains of using more transparent aerogel tiles and possible higher refractive index. The aerogel production technology has been transferred from Chiba University to a local company. We are evaluating the quality of aerogel after the technology transfer by ²⁰ measuring the characteristics of new samples.

9.1.5 Potentially interested community in Belle II

The following collaborators expressed their interest in the ARICH hardware upgrade activities: KEK, Tokyo Metropolitan University, and Niigata University, all from Japan; the University of Naples, Italy; and Jožef Stefan Institute, Slovenia.

Table 9.1: Preliminary cost estimates in kUSD for photon detector upgrade based on SiPM and LAPPD. These include the costs for the associate R&D.

9.1.6 Cost and schedule

The current Aerogel RICH can operate efficiently until the design luminosity is reached. Therefore, all the sub-detector changes considered above are projected for the long-term upgrade. Preliminary cost estimates are given for two pho- $_5$ todetector options: silicon photomultipliers with 250,000 1 mm² channels and 64 20×20 cm² and 16 10×10 cm² LAPPDs. The estimates are based on the current understanding of the technologies under development.

9.2 ECL

Editor: *C.Cecchi*

This section contains a summary of the upgrade of the Belle II Electromagnetic Calorimeter (ECL). The current detector limitations are due to insensitivity ⁵ to the incident photon direction and to possible deterioration of the energy resolution due to the signals pileup that can be produced under severe background conditions. Some upgrade options have been discussed in order to cope with the high occupancy and background rate and to maintain good particle reconstruction performances.

¹⁰ **9.2.1 Anticipated performance limitations**

Since CsI(Tl) crystals scintillation decay time is relatively long, $\sim 1 \mu s$, the increase of beam background would results in a larger pileup noise that would deteriorate the detector energy resolution. This effect is particularly relevant for neutral particles with respect to electron and positrons, as they are mea-¹⁵ sured only in the ECL, without taking advantage of a good precise momentum measurement performed in the tracking detector. Simulated beam background has been superimposed on generic Monte Carlo (MC) $B\bar{B}$ events, and studies on the π^0 mass resolution have been done for the early phase-3 luminosity $(L = 1 \times 10^{34} \text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1})$ with nominal, ×2 and ×5 beam background as well as 20 the ultimate phase-3 luminosity ($L = 8 \times 10^{34}$ cm^{−2}s⁻¹) with nominal beam back-

ground cases. The $\gamma\gamma$ invariant mass spectrum is fitted with a Novosibirsk and a Chebichev functions for the π^0 signal and background, respectively. Resultant distributions are shown in Figure [9.2,](#page-149-0) early phase-3 luminosity with nominal background (left) and ultimate phase-3 luminosity (right). In the early phase-

 $_{\text{25}}$ 3 case, the π^{0} mass resolution and reconstruction efficiency are found to be 6 MeV and 30%, while they become 9 MeV and 15% in phase-3 case. The ultimate phase-3 environment with higher background deteriorates the matching of the ECL deposit with the true photon because of the higher combinatorial in the number of ECL clusters. This could represent a strong limiting factor for physics ³⁰ analysis with rare B decays where high efficiency is required.

Figure 9.2: Reconstructed π^0 mass for the early phase-3 luminosity with BGx1 background simulation (left) and for the ultimate phase-3 BGx1 background simulation (right). The signal peak has been fitted with a Novosibirsk function while the background is described by a Chebichev distribution.

Figure 9.3: π^0 mass distribution in $B \to \tau \nu$ events for ultimate phase-3 luminosity (green) compared to the early phase-3 luminosity with nominal BGX1 background distribution (blue).

In the $B \to \tau \nu$ analysis, one of the B mesons in the event is fully reconstructed and the rest of the event is required to have τ daughters. Since substantial fraction of τ decay modes contain π^0 , a good reconstruction of its invariant mass is crucial. The $\gamma\gamma$ invariant mass distribution is shown in Figure [9.3.](#page-150-0) In ⁵ Phase 3, the π^0 signal peak is unseen, thus indicating a serious limit in reconstructing fundamental physics objects.

To search for dark-sector particles in Belle II data, importance to search for a long-lived particle is increasing. A very interesting process it is the production of an axion-like-particle (ALP), a, in the B decay of $B \to Ka$. Such ALP is likely to 10 be a long-lived particle decaying into a photon pair. Since current ECL configuration has very little sensitivity to incident photon direction whose reconstruction relies only on subtle shower shape difference, its mass determination for the

long-lived ALP can only be done at the edge of the reconstructed invariant mass distribution when its lifetime (τ) is several tens of cm in $c\tau$, as shown in Figure ¹⁵ [9.4.](#page-151-0) Adding an extra device sensitive to incident photon direction is expected to significantly increase the mass determination power for such physics case.

9.2.2 Upgrade hypothesis

9.2.2.1 Replacement of CsI(Tl) crystals with pure CsI scintillator counters

In order to eliminate pile up noise, faster scintillation crystal gives a primary ²⁰ solution. Pure CsI is suitable for this purpose because its fast light component decay time is about 30 ns, a factor of 40 faster than CsI(Tl). However pure CsI light output is about 20 times smaller than CsI(Tl) and its peak emission of 310 nm is in the near-UV region where photosensors are less sensitive. That is why the use of CsI crystals for the Belle II calorimetry is very challenging and

²⁵ requires the identification of performing photodetectors in the near-UV region. Front end electronics should provide a fast integration and a high amplification

Figure 9.4: The reconstructed photon pair's invariant mass distribution in $B \rightarrow$ $Ka, a \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ MC sample for the axion-like-particle (ALP), a mass $m_a = 1$ GeV/ c^2 , lifetime $c\tau = 1$ cm (left) and 40 cm (right) cases.

Figure 9.5: Concept of the preshower detector. It is placed just in front of ECL and detects shower position and energy deposition, thus being sensitive to the photon incident direction.

for the signal readout. To match this condition, avalanche photodiode (APD) readout based on the Hamamatsu APD S8664-55 [\[131\]](#page-168-8) and S8664-1010 [\[132\]](#page-168-9) has been studied. The S8664 series APD is usually operated at the gain $\times 50$, using it at higher gain of \times 100 is found to be still stably operational. Attaching to ⁵ the photosensor a wavelength shifter (WLS) to emit about 500 nm wavelength

- light is also effective to get larger signal pulse by a factor 2∼3 [\[133\]](#page-168-10). The best solution is then to combine these two approaches by placing 4 Hamamatsu APD S8664-55 placed on the edge of the crystal with the photodetector coupled to a WLS. Simulation studies have been carried out to compare energy resolution of
- ¹⁰ the current detector with a pure CsI calorimeter and it turned out that to have a resolution of the order of 5% at 100 MeV energy we should have an Equivalent Noise Energy (ENC) not higher than 1 MeV. The described configuration with pure CsI crystal connected to a WLS and 4 APD's has shown to satisfy the requirement on the ENC at sub MeV level.

9.2.2.2 A preshower detector in front of the ECL

A second option considered for the ECL upgrade is a small detector system just in front of the ECL acting as a preshower detector as shown in Fig[.9.5.](#page-151-1) That has a sensitivity for photon incident direction, thanks to an excellent incident posi-⁵ tion resolution. Superior timing resolution can be featured. One layer consists of an active absorber with 1 radiation length thick crystal scintillator and a Si pixel detector to detect electron and positron passage when producing an electromagnetic shower. A GEANT4 based simulation with BGO/LYSO as the active absorber material and 1 mm^2 silicon pixels shows that the incident direction can ¹⁰ be reconstructed for 80% of the 1 GeV photons because they produce hits on two or more Si pixel detector layers. The position and angular resolutions are found

- to be 1.9 mm and 0.08 rad., respectively, for normal incidence. For the longlived ALP decay to a photon pair with $m_a = 2$ GeV/ c^2 and 40 cm flight distance, the photons from IP can be separated from those produced by the ALP decay ¹⁵ by about 2σ . We also see that significant portion of events' energy deposition
- is a few hundred MeV, thus the absorber part must be active with a reasonably good energy resolution. As for introduction of such a preshower detector, (1) it can act as a shield to stop significant fraction of beam background soft photons before hitting into the main ECL, thus mitigating pile up noise effect, (2) longi-
- ²⁰ tudinal sampling may help to distinguish photons and neutral hadrons by their different shower development characteristics, such possibility is worth to pursuit in addition to the already implemented pulse shape discrimination (PSD) [\[134\]](#page-168-11) technique to improve particle identification capability inside ECL, (3) it is interesting to identify physics cases due to better photon incident position resolution,
- ²⁵ timing resolution and capability to reconstruct incident photon direction, and (4) geometrical activity match between the preshower and the main ECL also may help to reduce backgrounds.

9.2.2.3 Complementing the PiN diode photosensors with avalanche photodiodes

- ³⁰ In this section the possibility of complementing the Belle photodiodes readout with two high-gain avalanche photodiodes (APDs) for the to readout of the CsI(Tl) crystals will be described. The APDs were readout with either transimpedence amplifiers (TZA) [13] or with the charge-integrating CR-110 amplifiers. The APD+TZA signal is shown in Figure [9.6](#page-153-0) (left) while the signal amplitude, af-
- ³⁵ ter the $CR (RC)^4$ filter, from APDs and the charge-integrating CR-110 is shown on the right side of the same Figure.

The Equivalent Noise Energy (the input-referred noise calculated from the signal to noise ratio at the shaper output, indicated as ENE) of the sum of two APDs with CR-110 readout, compared to the pin diodes on the same data run, is ⁴⁰ shown in Figure [9.7](#page-153-1) with and without background overlay.

The large amplitude signal grant to APD's a very small electronic noise and a reduced pile-up noise with respect to the pin diodes.

Figure 9.6: Signal amplitude for the APD plus transimpedence preamplifier configuration, the red curve represents the filtered waveform with a τ of 200 ns (left). Signal amplitude after shaping in the case of APD plus CR110 preamplifier (right). Notice the difference in the timescale on the horizontal axis for the two plots.

Figure 9.7: Equivalent Noise Energy as a function of the shaping time comparing pin diodes with APD with CR110 amplifier without (left) and with (right) 60 Co source.

9.2.2.4 Complementing the PiN diode photosensors with Silicon Photomultipliers (SiPM)

To control the pile-up in condition of high background it is possible to use a high gain photodetector to perform an accurate measurement of the timing exploit-

- ⁵ ing the large amount of light emitted by the CsI(Tl) crystals. SiPM's are a very good option thanks to their fast response, high gain and simplicity in use. Some preliminary studies have been done trying to understand the actual possibility of using these photodetectors for timing measurement, keeping the PiN diodes for the signal amplitude measurement. To start the R&D with SiPMs as the readout
- ¹⁰ system for CsI(Tl), crystals from Belle and a prototype SiPM by FBK (Fondazione Bruno Kessler) [\[135\]](#page-169-0), developed for the CTA (Cherenkov Telescope Array) experiment, have been used. This prototype SiPM is not optimized to match the emission peak (550 nm) of the light emitted by CsI(Tl) counter, but it is good enough for our test presenting 25% of photo detection efficiency (PDE) at the ¹⁵ above mentioned wavelength. Figure [9.8](#page-154-0) (left) shows the PDE as a function of
	- 154

the wavelength while on the right panel the PDE as a function of the overvoltage is shown.

Figure 9.8: Photodetection efficiency (PDE) as a function of the wavelength (left). Photo detection efficiency (PDE) as a function of the overvoltage (right).

The SiPM has an active area of 6x6 mm² (effective area 80 $\%$ of the active region), breakdown voltage of 26.5 V and a nominal gain at breakdown of $1.1 \times$ $_5$ 10⁶ electrons/p.e. which increases linearly with the overvoltage $(2-3\times10^6$ at +5 OV). The signal produced by the SiPM has been readout with a board from AdvanSid [\[136\]](#page-169-1) which contains a transimpedance amplifier with output impedance of Z=500 Ω corresponding to a gain of a factor 10³. The integral output signal is proportional to the detected charge. To calibrate the system ¹⁰ of CsI(Tl) plus SiPM the response to radioactive sources signal has been studied with a 137 Cs source emitting a photon at 700 KeV and with a 60 Co source emitting two photons of energy 1.17 MeV and 1.33 MeV. The calibration has been done with a sample of LaBr crystal which has high light output (70000 photons/MeV), a very short decay time (20 ns) and the emission peak at about 360 nm which 15 perfectly matches the region of the highest PDE of the FBK SiPM. In Figure [9.9](#page-154-1)

the measured spectrum for the two sources, on the left $137Cs$ and on the right $60C$ ₀, is shown. The second peak of the $60C$ ₀ spectrum is fainter than the first one, as expected, and in both distributions we can observe the contribution of the Compton edge.

Figure 9.9: $137Cs$ spectrum measured with the FBK SiPM (left). $60Co$ spectrum measured with the FBK SiPM (right).

Using the measurements of the integrated charge performed with this setup, the gain of the Advansid board has been derived to be $2{\times}10^5,$ $1.3{\times}10^6$ and $3{\times}10^6$ for 27, 29 and 31 bias voltages respectively. To evaluate the impact of the noise coming from the SiPM plus the Advansid board a measurement with and without

⁵ radioactive sources on a Belle CsI(Tl) crystal has been performed. Figure [9.10](#page-155-0) shows the signal peak amplitude with (blue distribution) and without source (orange distribution). The distribution of the signal of the CsI(Tl), when the $Cs₁₃₇$ source is present, is much larger than the one observed with the LaBr crystal, furthermore the noise (orange distribution) is not well separated from the signal ¹⁰ preventing the possibility of subtracting it in order to extract the signal.

Figure 9.10: Peak amplitude measured with the FBK SiPM with (blue) and without (orange) Cs_{137} source.

Others SiPM's better matching the CsI(Tl) emission spectrum as well as a customized low noise front end board will be tested to improve the separation between signal and noise.

9.2.3 Cost and schedule

 15 An estimation of the main cost for the Pure CsI crystals with APD readout $+$ WLS option is reported in Table [9.2.](#page-155-1)

Table 9.2: Estimated cost for the Pure CsI crystal calorimeter with APD $+$ WLS readout.

A rough estimation of the main cost for the pre-shower option has been evaluated (see Table [9.3\)](#page-156-0) considering the following dimensions: each endcap has 4.4 $m²$ (Outer radius 1.25 m, Inner radius 0.42 m), the Barrel Inner cylinder surface is 11.7 m^2 which results in 20 m^2 in total.

	Cost/unit $(k \in)$	Total cost($M \in$)
Si sensors	$100/m^2$	
LYSO	$600/m^2$	12
Photosensor (3 layers, 2pc, 8736 crystal)	100	5.2
Readout		$\overline{2}$
Mechanics		$\mathfrak{D}_{\mathfrak{p}}$
TOTAL.		23.2

Table 9.3: Estimated cost for the pre-shower calorimeter.

Finally, an estimation of the main cost for the CsI(Tl) crystals with LAAPD readout option is reported in Table [9.4.](#page-156-1)

	Cost/unit $(k \in)$	Total cost $(M \in)$
APD's (2/crystal)	0.5	4.4
FE (2/crystal)	0.2.	1.7
ECL extraction		2.0
TOTAL.		

Table 9.4: Estimated cost for the CsI(Tl) crystal calorimeter with APD readout.

⁵ **9.2.4 Potentially interested community in Belle II**

The following collaborators expressed their interest in the hardware upgrade activities: Budker Institute of Nuclear Physics (BINP), Russia, KEK, Japan, Nara Women's University, Japan, University of Naples and INFN-NA, Italy, University of Perugia and INFN-PG, Italy.

Bibliography

- [1] A. J. Bevan et al. "The Physics of the B Factories". In: *Eur. Phys. J. C* 74 (2014), p. 3026. DOI: [10.1140/epjc/s10052- 014- 3026- 9](https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-014-3026-9). arXiv: [1406.6311 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1406.6311).
- ⁵ [2] T. Abe et al. *Technical Design Report of SuperKEKB*. URL: [https://kds.](https://kds.kek.jp/indico/event/15914/) [kek.jp/indico/event/15914/](https://kds.kek.jp/indico/event/15914/).
	- [3] T. Abe et al. "Belle II Technical Design Report". In: (Nov. 2010). arXiv: [1011.0352 \[physics.ins-det\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1011.0352).
- [4] I. Adachi et al. "Detectors for extreme luminosity: Belle II". In: *Nucl.* ¹⁰ *Instrum. Meth. A* 907 (2018), pp. 46–59. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2018.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.03.068) [03.068](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.03.068).
	- [5] E. Kou et al. "The Belle II Physics Book". In: *PTEP* 2019.12 (2019). Ed. by E. Kou and P. Urquijo. [Erratum: PTEP 2020, 029201 (2020)], p. 123C01. DOI: [10.1093/ptep/ptz106](https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/ptz106). arXiv: [1808.10567 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1808.10567).
- ¹⁵ [6] URL: <https://confluence.desy.de/display/BI/Belle+II+Publications> (visited on 10/24/2023).
	- [7] *SuperKEKB International Task Force reports*. [https://www- linac.kek.](https://www-linac.kek.jp/linac-com/skb-itf/ml/) [jp/linac-com/skb-itf/ml/](https://www-linac.kek.jp/linac-com/skb-itf/ml/).
- [8] F. Forti et al. "Snowmass Whitepaper: The Belle II Detector Upgrade Pro-²⁰ gram". In: *Snowmass 2021*. Mar. 2022. arXiv: [2203.11349 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2203.11349).
	- [9] A. Natochii et al. "Beam background expectations for Belle II at SuperKEKB". In: *Snowmass 2021*. Mar. 2022. arXiv: [2203.05731 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2203.05731).
- [10] A. Natochii et al. "Measured and projected beam backgrounds in the Belle II experiment at the SuperKEKB collider". In: *Nuclear Instruments* ²⁵ *and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 1055 (2023), p. 168550. ISSN: 0168- 9002. DOI: [https : / / doi . org / 10 . 1016 / j . nima . 2023 . 168550](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2023.168550). URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900223005405>.
- [11] T. Kuhr et al. "The Belle II Core Software". In: *Comput. Softw. Big Sci.* ³⁰ 3.1 (2019), p. 1. DOI: [10.1007/s41781-018-0017-9](https://doi.org/10.1007/s41781-018-0017-9). arXiv: [1809.04299](https://arxiv.org/abs/1809.04299) [\[physics.comp-ph\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1809.04299).
	- [12] P. Raimondi. *Status on SuperB Effort*. Presentation at 2nd SuperB Meeting, Frascati, Italy. 2006.

- [13] M. Bona et al. "SuperB: A High-Luminosity Asymmetric $e^+ e^-$ Super Flavor Factory. Conceptual Design Report". In: (May 2007). arXiv: [0709 .](https://arxiv.org/abs/0709.0451) [0451 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/0709.0451).
- [14] Miguel A. Furman. "Hourglass effects for asymmetric colliders". In: *Conf.* ⁵ *Proc. C* 910506 (1991). Ed. by Loretta Lizama and Joe Chew, pp. 422– 424.
- [15] D. Zhou et al. "Interplay of Beam-Beam, Lattice Nonlinearity, and Space Charge Effects in the SuperKEKB Collider". In: *6th International Particle Accelerator Conference*. 2015, WEYB3. DOI: [10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2015-](https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2015-WEYB3) 10 [WEYB3](https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2015-WEYB3).
	- [16] M. Zobov et al. "Test of crab-waist collisions at DAFNE Phi factory". In: *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 104 (2010), p. 174801. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.104.](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.104.174801) [174801](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.104.174801).
- [17] M. Masuzawa et al. "Chromatic X-Y Coupling Correction by Tilting Sex-¹⁵ tupole Magnets in the SuperKEKB Positron Ring" (Bangkok, Thailand). presented at IPAC'22, unpublished. July 2022.
	- [18] T. Ishibashi et al. "Movable collimator system for SuperKEKB". In: *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams* 23.5 (2020), p. 053501. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevAccelBea](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.23.053501)ms. [23.053501](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.23.053501).
- ²⁰ [19] G. Besnier, D. Brandt, and B. Zotter. "THE TRANSVERSE MODE COU-PLING INSTABILITY IN LARGE STORAGE RINGS". In: *Part. Accel.* 17 (1985), p. 51.
- [20] M. Tobiyama, J. W. Flanagan, and A. Drago. "Bunch by bunch feedback systems for SuperKEKB rings". In: *Proceedings of the 13th annual meeting* ²⁵ *of Particle Accelerator Society of Japan*. 2016, pp. 144–148. URL: [https:](https://www.pasj.jp/web_publish/pasj2016/proceedings/PDF/TUOM/TUOM06.pdf) [/ / www . pasj . jp / web _ publish / pasj2016 / proceedings / PDF / TUOM /](https://www.pasj.jp/web_publish/pasj2016/proceedings/PDF/TUOM/TUOM06.pdf) [TUOM06.pdf](https://www.pasj.jp/web_publish/pasj2016/proceedings/PDF/TUOM/TUOM06.pdf).
- [21] H. Ikeda et al. "Observation of sudden beam loss in SuperKEKB". In: *Proc. IPAC'23* (Venice, Italy). IPAC'23 - 14th International Particle Accelerator ³⁰ Conference 14. May 2023, pp. 716–719. ISBN: 978-3-95450-231-8. DOI:
	- [10.18429/JACoW- IPAC2023- MOPL072](https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2023-MOPL072). URL: [https://indico.jacow.](https://indico.jacow.org/event/41/contributions/1252) [org/event/41/contributions/1252](https://indico.jacow.org/event/41/contributions/1252).
- [22] T. Abe et al. "Direct observation of breakdown trigger seeds in a normalconducting rf accelerating cavity". In: *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams* 21.12 (2018), ³⁵ p. 122002. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.21.122002](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.21.122002).
	- [23] SAD Home Page. *Strategic Accelerator Design*. http://acc-physics. [kek.jp/SAD/](http://acc-physics.kek.jp/SAD/). 1986 (accessed December 2022).
- [24] N. Iida et al. "Beam injection issues at SuperKEKB". In: *Proc. IPAC'23* (Venice, Italy). IPAC'23 - 14th International Particle Accelerator Confer-⁴⁰ ence 14. May 2023, pp. 832–835. ISBN: 978-3-95450-231-8. DOI: [10 .](https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2023-MOPL120) [18429/JACoW- IPAC2023- MOPL120](https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2023-MOPL120). URL: [https://indico.jacow.org/](https://indico.jacow.org/event/41/contributions/1308) [event/41/contributions/1308](https://indico.jacow.org/event/41/contributions/1308).

- [25] JLC Group. *JLC-I*. [https : / / catalogue . library . cern / literature /](https://catalogue.library.cern/literature/2mzjd-nyx42) [2mzjd-nyx42](https://catalogue.library.cern/literature/2mzjd-nyx42). Dec. 1992.
- [26] L. Merminga et al. "Collimation systems for a TeV linear collider". In: *Part. Accel.* 48 (1994), pp. 85–108.
- ⁵ [27] N. Ohuchi et al. "SuperKEKB beam final focus superconducting magnet system". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. Phys. Res., Sect. A* 1021 (2022), p. 165930.
- [28] *Opera-3d—SIMULIA*. Dassault Systèmes. Kidlington, Oxfordshire, UK. URL: [https : / / www . 3ds . com / products - services / simulia / products /](https://www.3ds.com/products-services/simulia/products/opera/) ¹⁰ [opera/](https://www.3ds.com/products-services/simulia/products/opera/).
	- [29] Emanuela Barzi and Alexander V. Zlobin. " $Nb₃Sn$ Wires and Cables for High-Field Accelerator Magnets". In: *Nb*³ *Sn Accelerator Magnets*. Ed. by Daniel Schoerling and Alexander V. Zlobin. 2019, pp. 23–51. DOI: [10.](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-16118-7_2) [1007/978-3-030-16118-7_2](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-16118-7_2).
- ¹⁵ [30] A. Devred. "Practical low-temperature superconductors for electromagnets". In: (July 2004). DOI: [10.5170/CERN-2004-006](https://doi.org/10.5170/CERN-2004-006).
	- [31] N. Andreev et al. "Magnetic mirror structure for testing shell-type quadrupole coils". In: *IEEE Trans. Appl. Supercond.* 20.3 (2010), pp. 288–291. DOI: [10.1109/TASC.2009.2039704](https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2009.2039704).
- ²⁰ [32] J. Gareyte. "Transverse Mode Coupling Instabilities". In: *AIP Conference Proceedings* 592 (2001), pp. 260–278. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1063/](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1063/1.1420419) [1.1420419](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1063/1.1420419).
	- [33] A. W. Chao and M. Tigner. *Handbook of accelerator physics and engineering*. World Scientific, 1999.
- ²⁵ [34] T. Yue, Q.-L. Xiu, Y.-W. Wang, Zh. Duan, and Q. Qin. "Physics design of collimators to reduce lost particle background at the CEPC". In: *Chinese Physics C* 40 (2016), p. 117001. DOI: [10 . 1088 / 1674 - 1137 / 40 / 11 /](https://doi.org/10.1088/1674-1137/40/11/117001) [117001](https://doi.org/10.1088/1674-1137/40/11/117001). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1088/1674-1137/40/11/117001>.
- [35] K. Ohmi and T. Ishibashi. "Private communication". In: *KEK-SuperKEKB* ³⁰ *accelerator group* (Feb. 2022), p. 1.
- [36] K. Shibata et al. "Commissioning Status of SuperKEKB Vacuum System". In: *Proc. 62nd ICFA ABDW on High Luminosity Circular e*⁺*e* [−] *Colliders (eeFACT'18), 24-27 Sep. 2018* (Hong Kong, China). 62. JACoW Publishing, Apr. 2019, pp. 226–233. ISBN: 978-3-95450-216-5. DOI: [doi :](https://doi.org/doi:10.18429/JACoW-eeFACT2018-WEOAB01) $10.18429 / JACoW - eeFACT2018 - WEOAB01. URL: http://jacow.org/$ [eefact2018/papers/weoab01.pdf](http://jacow.org/eefact2018/papers/weoab01.pdf).
- [37] A. Beaulieu. "The Study and Shielding of Electromagnetic Radiation from SuperKEKB Electron and Positron Beam Interactions". In: *University of Victoria* BELLE2-PTHESIS-2019-001 (2019), p. 256. URL: [%7Bhttps://](%7Bhttps://docs.belle2.org/record/1474%7D) ⁴⁰ [docs.belle2.org/record/1474%7D](%7Bhttps://docs.belle2.org/record/1474%7D).

- [38] Yukiyoshi Ohnishi et al. "Accelerator design at SuperKEKB". In: *Progress of Theoretical and Experimental Physics* 2013.3 (Mar. 2013). 03A011. ISSN: 2050-3911. DOI: [10.1093/ptep/pts083](https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/pts083). eprint: [https://academic.](https://academic.oup.com/ptep/article-pdf/2013/3/03A011/4439973/pts083.pdf) [oup.com/ptep/article- pdf/2013/3/03A011/4439973/pts083.pdf](https://academic.oup.com/ptep/article-pdf/2013/3/03A011/4439973/pts083.pdf). ⁵ URL: <https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/pts083>.
	- [39] H. Ikeda et al. "Beam Loss Monitor at SuperKEKB". In: *Proc. International Beam Instrumentation Conference (IBIC'14)*. TUPD22. 2014, pp. 459– 462. URL: [https : / / accelconf . web . cern . ch / ibic2014 / papers /](https://accelconf.web.cern.ch/ibic2014/papers/tupd22.pdf) [tupd22.pdf](https://accelconf.web.cern.ch/ibic2014/papers/tupd22.pdf).
- ¹⁰ [40] S. Bacher et al. "Performance of the diamond-based beam-loss monitor system of Belle II". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 997 (2021), p. 165157. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2021.165157) [org/10.1016/j.nima.2021.165157](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2021.165157). URL: [https://www.sciencedirect.](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900221001418) ¹⁵ [com/science/article/pii/S0168900221001418](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900221001418).
- [41] M. Gabriel et al. "A time resolved study of injection backgrounds during the first commissioning phase of SuperKEKB". In: *The European Physical Journal C* 81 (2021), p. 972. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-021-09769-3) [s10052-021-09769-3](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-021-09769-3). URL: [https://link.springer.com/article/10.](https://link.springer.com/article/10.1140/epjc/s10052-021-09769-3) ²⁰ [1140/epjc/s10052-021-09769-3](https://link.springer.com/article/10.1140/epjc/s10052-021-09769-3).
	- [42] A. Natochii et al. *Snowmass White Paper: Beam background expectations for Belle II at SuperKEKB*. 2022. DOI: [10.48550/ARXIV.2203.05731](https://doi.org/10.48550/ARXIV.2203.05731). URL: <https://arxiv.org/abs/2203.05731>.
- [43] M. Tobiyama, J. Flanagan, and A. Drago. "Bunch by bunch feedback sys-²⁵ tems for SuperKEKB rings". In: *Proc. 13th Annual Meeting of Particle Accelerator Society of Japan (PASJ2016)*. TUOM06. 2016, p. 144. URL: [https : / / www . pasj . jp / web _ publish / pasj2016 / proceedings / PDF /](https://www.pasj.jp/web_publish/pasj2016/proceedings/PDF/TUOM/TUOM06.pdf) [TUOM/TUOM06.pdf](https://www.pasj.jp/web_publish/pasj2016/proceedings/PDF/TUOM/TUOM06.pdf).
- [44] Shinji Terui et al. "The Report of Machine Studies Related to the Vertical ³⁰ Beam Size Blow-Up in SuperKEKB LER". In: *JACoW* IPAC2022 (2022), WEPOTK050. DOI: [10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2022-WEPOTK050](https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2022-WEPOTK050).
- [45] A. Natochii et al. "Improved simulation of beam backgrounds and collimation at SuperKEKB". In: *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams* 24 (8 Aug. 2021), p. 081001. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.24.081001](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.24.081001). URL: [https:](https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.24.081001) ³⁵ [//link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.24.081001](https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.24.081001).
- [46] S. Agostinelli et al. "Geant4—a simulation toolkit". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 506.3 (2003), pp. 250–303. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168- 9002\(03\)](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(03)01368-8) ⁴⁰ [01368- 8](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(03)01368-8). URL: [https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900203013688) [pii/S0168900203013688](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900203013688).
	- [47] J. Allison et al. "Geant4 developments and applications". In: *IEEE Transactions on Nuclear Science* 53.1 (2006), pp. 270–278. DOI: [10.1109/TNS.](https://doi.org/10.1109/TNS.2006.869826) [2006.869826](https://doi.org/10.1109/TNS.2006.869826).

- [48] J. Allison et al. "Recent developments in Geant4". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 835 (2016), pp. 186–225. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https : / / doi . org / 10 . 1016 / j . nima . 2016 . 06 .](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2016.06.125) ⁵ [125](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2016.06.125). URL: [https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900216306957) [S0168900216306957](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900216306957).
	- [49] *Belle II Analysis Software Framework (basf2)*. [https : / / doi . org / 10 .](https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.5574115) [5281/zenodo.5574115](https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.5574115). DOI: [10.5281/zenodo.5574115](https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.5574115).
- [50] P.M. Lewis et al. "First measurements of beam backgrounds at SuperKEKB". 10 **In:** *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 914 (2019), pp. 69–144. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https : / / doi . org / 10 . 1016 / j .](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.05.071) [nima.2018.05.071](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.05.071). URL: [https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900218306909) [article/pii/S0168900218306909](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900218306909).
- 15 [51] Z. Liptak et al. "Measurements of beam backgrounds in SuperKEKB Phase 2". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 1040 (2022), p. 167168. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https : / / doi . org / 10 . 1016 / j .](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2022.167168) [nima.2022.167168](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2022.167168). URL: [https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900222005149) ²⁰ [article/pii/S0168900222005149](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900222005149).
- [52] J. Schueler et al. "Application of recoil-imaging time projection chambers to directional neutron background measurements in the SuperKEKB accelerator tunnel". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equip-*²⁵ *ment* 1040 (2022), p. 167291. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.org/](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2022.167291) [10.1016/j.nima.2022.167291](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2022.167291). URL: [https://www.sciencedirect.](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900222006179) [com/science/article/pii/S0168900222006179](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900222006179).
- [53] Belle II Collaboration. *Belle2 Physics List*. [https://github.com/belle2/](https://github.com/belle2/basf2/blob/release-06-00-09/simulation/doc/Belle2PhysicsList.rst) [basf2/blob/release-06-00-09/simulation/doc/Belle2PhysicsList.](https://github.com/belle2/basf2/blob/release-06-00-09/simulation/doc/Belle2PhysicsList.rst) ³⁰ [rst](https://github.com/belle2/basf2/blob/release-06-00-09/simulation/doc/Belle2PhysicsList.rst). 2021 (accessed June 2023).
	- [54] Geant4 Collaboration. *Guide for Physics Lists*. [https://geant4-userdoc.](https://geant4-userdoc.web.cern.ch/UsersGuides/PhysicsListGuide/html/index.html) [web . cern . ch / UsersGuides / PhysicsListGuide / html / index . html](https://geant4-userdoc.web.cern.ch/UsersGuides/PhysicsListGuide/html/index.html). 2022 (accessed June 2023).
- [55] L.Bosisio et al. "SVD Radiation and Environmental Monitoring: General ³⁵ Requirements". In: *BELLE2 - NOTE - 43* (2015).
	- [56] S. Bacher et al. "Performance of the diamond-based beam-loss monitor system of Belle II". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 997 (2021), p. 165157. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2021.165157](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2021.165157).
- [57] R. S. Sussmann. *CVD diamond for electronic devices and sensors*. 1st. Wi-⁴⁰ ley, 2009. DOI: [10.1002/9780470740392](https://doi.org/10.1002/9780470740392).
	- [58] E. Berdermann. "Diamond for particle and photon detection in extreme conditions". In: *Comprehensive Hard Materials / Sarin, Vinod*. Elsevier Science, 2014, pp. 407-467. DOI: 10. 1016/B978-0-08-096527-7. [00054-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-08-096527-7.00054-4).
- [59] L. Vitale. "EoI: RMBA Upgrade". In: *Internal Document* (2021). URL: <https://confluence.desy.de/display/BI/Upgrade+EOI+Submission>.
- [60] P.M. Lewis et al. "First Measurements of Beam Backgrounds at SuperKEKB". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 914 (2019), pp. 69–144. DOI: [10 . 1016 / j .](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.05.071)
- ⁵ [nima.2018.05.071](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.05.071). arXiv: [1802.01366 \[physics.ins-det\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1802.01366).
	- [61] Latika Aggarwal et al. "Snowmass White Paper: Belle II physics reach and plans for the next decade and beyond". In: (July 2022). arXiv: [2207.](https://arxiv.org/abs/2207.06307) [06307 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2207.06307).
- [62] Valerio Bertacchi et al. "Track finding at Belle II". In: *Comput. Phys. Com-*¹⁰ *mun.* 259 (2021), p. 107610. DOI: [10.1016/j.cpc.2020.107610](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cpc.2020.107610). arXiv: [2003.12466 \[physics.ins-det\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2003.12466).
	- [63] F. Abudin´en et al. "B-flavor tagging at Belle II". In: *Eur. Phys. J. C* 82.4 (2022), p. 283. DOI: [10.1140/epjc/s10052-022-10180-9](https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-022-10180-9). arXiv: [2110.](https://arxiv.org/abs/2110.00790) [00790 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2110.00790).
- 15 [64] H. Kakuno et al. "Measurement of $-V(ub)$ using inclusive B —> X(u) l nu decays with a novel X(u) reconstruction method". In: *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 92 (2004), p. 101801. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.92.101801](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.92.101801). arXiv: [hep-ex/0311048](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-ex/0311048).
- [65] Bernard Aubert et al. "Determination of $|V_{ub}|$ from measurements of the 20 electron and neutrino momenta in inclusive semileptonic B decays". In: *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 95 (2005). Ed. by R. Brenner, C. P. de los Heros, and J. Rathsman. [Erratum: Phys.Rev.Lett. 97, 019903 (2006)], p. 111801. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.95.111801](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.95.111801). arXiv: [hep-ex/0506036](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-ex/0506036).
- [66] I. Adachi et al. "Evidence for $B^- \to \tau^- \bar{\nu}_{\tau}$ with a Hadronic Tagging ²⁵ Method Using the Full Data Sample of Belle". In: *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 110.13 (2013), p. 131801. DOI: [10 . 1103 / PhysRevLett . 110 . 131801](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.110.131801). arXiv: [1208.4678 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1208.4678).
	- [67] I. Adachi et al. "Evidence for $B^+ \to K^+ \nu \bar{\nu}$ Decays". In: (Nov. 2023). arXiv: [2311.14647 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2311.14647).
- ³⁰ [68] Jan Kieseler. "Object condensation: one-stage grid-free multi-object reconstruction in physics detectors, graph and image data". In: *Eur. Phys. J. C* 80.9 (2020), p. 886. DOI: [10.1140/epjc/s10052- 020- 08461- 2](https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-020-08461-2). arXiv: [2002.03605 \[physics.data-an\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.03605).
- [69] Marc Neu et al. "Real-time Graph Building on FPGAs for Machine Learn-³⁵ ing Trigger Applications in Particle Physics". In: (July 2023). arXiv: [2307.](https://arxiv.org/abs/2307.07289) [07289 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2307.07289).
- [70] Lea Reuter et al. "Graph Neural Network based Track Finding in the Central Drift Chamber at Belle II". CHEP23. 2023. URL: [https://indico.](https://indico.jlab.org/event/459/contributions/11761/attachments/9441/13689/GNN_based_TrackFinding_Belle2_LReuter.pdf) [jlab . org / event / 459 / contributions / 11761 / attachments / 9441 /](https://indico.jlab.org/event/459/contributions/11761/attachments/9441/13689/GNN_based_TrackFinding_Belle2_LReuter.pdf) ⁴⁰ [13689/GNN_based_TrackFinding_Belle2_LReuter.pdf](https://indico.jlab.org/event/459/contributions/11761/attachments/9441/13689/GNN_based_TrackFinding_Belle2_LReuter.pdf).
	- 163
- [71] Isabel Haide et al. "Improved Clustering in the Belle II Electromagnetic Calorimeter with Graph Neural Networks". CHEP23. 2023. URL: [https:](https://indico.jlab.org/event/459/contributions/11756/attachments/9700/14154/IsabelHaide_CHEP_Talk_110523.pdf) [//indico.jlab.org/event/459/contributions/11756/attachments/](https://indico.jlab.org/event/459/contributions/11756/attachments/9700/14154/IsabelHaide_CHEP_Talk_110523.pdf) [9700/14154/IsabelHaide_CHEP_Talk_110523.pdf](https://indico.jlab.org/event/459/contributions/11756/attachments/9700/14154/IsabelHaide_CHEP_Talk_110523.pdf).
- ⁵ [72] F. Wemmer et al. "Photon Reconstruction in the Belle II Calorimeter Using Graph Neural Networks". In: (June 2023). arXiv: [2306 . 04179](https://arxiv.org/abs/2306.04179) [\[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2306.04179).
- [73] T. Keck et al. "The Full Event Interpretation: An Exclusive Tagging Algorithm for the Belle II Experiment". In: *Comput. Softw. Big Sci.* 3.1 (2019), ¹⁰ p. 6. DOI: [10.1007/s41781-019-0021-8](https://doi.org/10.1007/s41781-019-0021-8). arXiv: [1807.08680 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1807.08680).
	- [74] Gianluca Aglieri Rinella. "The ALPIDE pixel sensor chip for the upgrade of the ALICE Inner Tracking System". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A*. Proceedings of the Vienna Conference on Instrumentation 2016 845 (2017), pp. 583–587. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2016.05.016](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2016.05.016).
- 15 [75] W. Snoeys et al. "A process modification for CMOS monolithic active pixel sensors for enhanced depletion, timing performance and radiation tolerance". en. In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 871 (Nov. 2017), pp. 90–96. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [10.1016/j.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2017.07.046) ²⁰ [nima.2017.07.046](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2017.07.046). URL: [http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/](http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S016890021730791X) [article/pii/S016890021730791X](http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S016890021730791X) (visited on 04/29/2020).
	- [76] C. Bespin et al. "DMAPS Monopix developments in large and small electrode designs". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 978 (Oct. 2020), p. 164460. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2020.164460](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2020.164460).
- 25 [77] Ivan Perić et al. "The FEI3 readout chip for the ATLAS pixel detector". en. In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*. Proceedings of the International Workshop on Semiconductor Pixel Detectors for Particles and Imaging 565.1 (Sept. 2006), pp. 178–187. ISSN: 0168-9002. ³⁰ DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2006.05.032](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2006.05.032). URL: [http://www.sciencedirect.](http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900206007649) [com/science/article/pii/S0168900206007649](http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900206007649) (visited on 11/19/2020).
- [78] Maurice Garcia-Sciveres, Jorgen Christiansen, and Flavio Loddo. "RD53B Manual". fr. In: *1) Detailed ATLAS Manual pdf from gitlab* (Mar. 2019). Number: CERN-RD53-PUB-19-002. URL: [https://cds.cern.ch/record/](https://cds.cern.ch/record/2665301) ³⁵ [2665301](https://cds.cern.ch/record/2665301) (visited on 04/04/2022).
	- [79] C. Bespin. *Performance of unirradiated TJ-Monopix 2*. Valencia, Spain, Apr. 2023. URL: [https://indico.cern.ch/event/1191719/contributio](https://indico.cern.ch/event/1191719/contributions/5368096/)ns/ [5368096/](https://indico.cern.ch/event/1191719/contributions/5368096/) (visited on 08/23/2023).
- [80] L. Massaccesi. *A CMOS pixels upgrade for the Belle II Vertex Detector*. ⁴⁰ Trento, Italy, Feb. 2023. URL: [A%20CMOS%20pixels%20upgrade%20for%](A%20CMOS%20pixels%20upgrade%20for%20the%20Belle%20II%20Vertex%20Detectorof%20Belle%20II) [20the%20Belle%20II%20Vertex%20Detectorof%20Belle%20II](A%20CMOS%20pixels%20upgrade%20for%20the%20Belle%20II%20Vertex%20Detectorof%20Belle%20II) (visited on 08/23/2023).

- [81] M. Babeluk et al. "CMOS MAPS upgrade for the Belle II Vertex Detector". en. In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 1048 (Mar. 2023), p. 168015. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2023.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2023.168015) ⁵ [168015](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2023.168015). URL: [https : / / www . sciencedirect . com / science / article /](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900223000050) [pii/S0168900223000050](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900223000050) (visited on 01/14/2023).
	- [82] M. Schwickardi. *Upgrade of Belle II Vertex Detector with CMOS Pixel Technology · Indico*. Oslo, Norway, June 2023. URL: [https://indico.cern.](https://indico.cern.ch/event/1247911/contributions/5394507/) [ch/event/1247911/contributions/5394507/](https://indico.cern.ch/event/1247911/contributions/5394507/) (visited on 08/23/2023).
- ¹⁰ [83] Hendrik Jansen et al. "Performance of the EUDET-type beam telescopes". en. In: *EPJ Techniques and Instrumentation* 3.1 (Dec. 2016). Number: 1 Publisher: SpringerOpen, pp. 1–20. ISSN: 2195-7045. DOI: [10.1140/](https://doi.org/10.1140/epjti/s40485-016-0033-2) [epjti/s40485-016-0033-2](https://doi.org/10.1140/epjti/s40485-016-0033-2). URL: [https://epjtechniquesandinstrumen](https://epjtechniquesandinstrumentation.springeropen.com/articles/10.1140/epjti/s40485-016-0033-2)tation. [springeropen . com / articles / 10 . 1140 / epjti / s40485 - 016 - 0033 - 2](https://epjtechniquesandinstrumentation.springeropen.com/articles/10.1140/epjti/s40485-016-0033-2) 15 (visited on $11/14/2022$).
- [84] T. Fillinger. "Detector Simulation for a Potential Upgrade of the Vertex Detector of the Belle II Experiment". en. In: *Acta Physica Polonica B* 52.8 (2021), p. 909. ISSN: 0587-4254, 1509-5770. DOI: [10.5506/APhysPolB.](https://doi.org/10.5506/APhysPolB.52.909) [52.909](https://doi.org/10.5506/APhysPolB.52.909). URL: [http://www.actaphys.uj.edu.pl/findarticle?series=](http://www.actaphys.uj.edu.pl/findarticle?series=Reg&vol=52&page=909) ²⁰ [Reg&vol=52&page=909](http://www.actaphys.uj.edu.pl/findarticle?series=Reg&vol=52&page=909) (visited on 10/14/2021).
	- [85] Konstantinos Moustakas. "Design and Development of Depleted Monolithic Active Pixel Sensors with Small Collection Electrode for High-Radiation Applications". PhD Thesis. U. Bonn (main), Bonn U., 2021. DOI: [CERN-](https://doi.org/CERN-THESIS-2021-146)[THESIS-2021-146](https://doi.org/CERN-THESIS-2021-146).
- ²⁵ [86] Alessandra Fantoni. "Upgrade of the ALICE inner tracking system: Construction and commissioning". In: 95.8 (2020), p. 084011. DOI: [10 .](https://doi.org/10.1088/1402-4896/aba0f7) [1088/1402-4896/aba0f7](https://doi.org/10.1088/1402-4896/aba0f7).
- [87] K. Adamczyk et al. "The design, construction, operation and performance of the Belle II silicon vertex detector". en. In: *Journal of Instrumentation* ³⁰ 17.11 (Nov. 2022). Publisher: IOP Publishing, P11042. ISSN: 1748-0221. DOI: [10.1088/1748-0221/17/11/P11042](https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/17/11/P11042). URL: [https://dx.doi.org/](https://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/17/11/P11042)

[10.1088/1748-0221/17/11/P11042](https://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/17/11/P11042) (visited on 11/30/2022).

- [88] J. P. Cachemiche. "The PCIe-based readout system for the LHCb experiment". In: *Topical Workshop on Elect. for Part. Phys.* 2015. URL: [https:](https://indico.cern.ch/event/357738/sessions/71607/) ³⁵ [//indico.cern.ch/event/357738/sessions/71607/](https://indico.cern.ch/event/357738/sessions/71607/).
	- [89] Akimasa Ishikawa et al. "New pixel detector concept DuTiP for Belle II upgrade and the ILC with an SOI technology". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 978 (2020), p. 164404. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2020.164404](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2020.164404).
- [90] Y. Ono et al. "Development of the Pixel OR SOI detector for high en-⁴⁰ ergy physics experiments". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 731 (2013). Ed. by Yoshinobu Unno et al., pp. 266–269. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2013.06.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2013.06.044) [044](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2013.06.044).

- [91] Shun Ono et al. "Development of a monolithic pixel sensor based on SOI technology for the ILC vertex detector". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.* A924 (2019), pp. 431–435. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2018.06.075](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.06.075).
- [92] Zhigang Wu et al. "A prototype SOI pixel sensor for CEPC vertex". In: ⁵ *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 924 (2019), pp. 409–416. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.06.059) [2018.06.059](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.06.059).
	- [93] Roma Bugiel et al. "Test-beam results of a SOI pixel-detector prototype". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 901 (2018), pp. 173–179. DOI: [10.1016/j.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.06.017) [nima.2018.06.017](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.06.017).
- ¹⁰ [94] R. Bugiel et al. "High spatial resolution monolithic pixel detector in SOI technology". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 988 (2021), p. 164897. DOI: [10.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2020.164897) [1016/j.nima.2020.164897](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2020.164897).
	- [95] Y Arai, T Miyoshi, and I Kurachi. "SOI Monolithic Pixel Technology for Radiation Image Sensor". In: *Tech Digst. IEDM* (2019).
- ¹⁵ [96] Kazuhiko Hara et al. "Radiation hardness of silicon-on-insulator pixel devices". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 924 (2019), pp. 426–430. DOI: [10.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.05.077) [1016/j.nima.2018.05.077](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2018.05.077).
- [97] M. Šuljić. "ALPIDE: the Monolithic Active Pixel Sensor for the ALICE ITS upgrade". In: *JINST* 11.11 (2016). Ed. by Claudia Gemme and Leonardo ²⁰ Rossi, p. C11025. DOI: [10.1088/1748-0221/11/11/C11025](https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/11/11/C11025).
	- [98] Andreas Löschcke Centeno et al. A *TPC-based tracking system for a future Belle II upgrade*. 2022. arXiv: [2203.07287 \[physics.ins-det\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2203.07287).
- [99] Y. Bilevych et al. "TwinGrid: A wafer post-processed multistage Micro Patterned Gaseous Detector". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in* ²⁵ *Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 610.3 (2009), pp. 644–648. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2009.09.054](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2009.09.054). URL: [https://www.](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900209017963) [sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900209017963](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900209017963).
- [100] P. M. Kluit et al. "Pixel TPC R&D". In: *The 2020 International Workshop* ³⁰ *on the High Energy Circular Electron Positron Collider*. 2020. URL: [https:](https://indico.ihep.ac.cn/event/11444) [//indico.ihep.ac.cn/event/11444](https://indico.ihep.ac.cn/event/11444).
	- [101] Peter Križan (for the Belle II Collaboration). "The Belle II Upgrade Program". In: *41st International Conference on High Energy physics*. 2022. URL: <https://arxiv.org/pdf/2211.13634.pdf> (visited on 11/24/2022).
- ³⁵ [102] Xiyang Wang and Hongyu Zhang et al. "Design of a high-speed and lownoise preamplifier for SiPM". In: (Nov. 2023). ChinaXiv: <202305.00148>.
	- [103] G. Aielli et al. "Improving the RPC rate capability". In: *Journal of Instrumentation* 11.07 (July 2016), P07014. DOI: [10.1088/1748-0221/11/07/](https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/11/07/P07014) [P07014](https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/11/07/P07014). URL: <https://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/11/07/P07014>.
- [104] K Abe et al. "Performance of glass RPC operated in streamer mode with SF6 gas mixture". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 455.2 (2000), pp. 397–404. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(00)00518-0) ⁵ [org/10.1016/S0168-9002\(00\)00518-0](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(00)00518-0). URL: [https://www.sciencedire](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900200005180)ct. [com/science/article/pii/S0168900200005180](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900200005180).
- [105] M Yamaga et al. "RPC systems for BELLE detector at KEKB". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 456.1 (2000). Proceedings 10 of the 5th Int. Workshop on Resistive Plate Chambers and Related Detectors, pp. 109–112. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1016/](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(00)00973-6) [S0168 - 9002\(00 \) 00973 - 6](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(00)00973-6). URL: [https : / / www . sciencedirect . com /](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900200009736) [science/article/pii/S0168900200009736](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900200009736).
- [106] K. Abe et al. "Detection of Muons, and KOL Mesons from $e+e-$ collisions ¹⁵ using the endcap RPC module in the Belle detector". In: *IEEE Transactions on Nuclear Science* 47.6 (2000), pp. 1748–1752. DOI: [10 . 1109 /](https://doi.org/10.1109/TNS.2000.914440) [TNS.2000.914440](https://doi.org/10.1109/TNS.2000.914440).
- [107] A. Abashian et al. "The KL/μ detector subsystem for the BELLE experiment at the KEK B-factory". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in* ²⁰ *Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 449.1 (2000), pp. 112–124. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002\(99\)01383-2](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(99)01383-2). URL: [https://](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900299013832) www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900299013832.
- [108] H Sakaue et al. "Test of freonless operation of resistive plate chambers ²⁵ with glass electrodes—1mm gas gap vs 2mm gas gap". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 482.1 (2002), pp. 216–225. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168- 9002\(01\)](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(01)01624-2) [01624- 2](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(01)01624-2). URL: [https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900201016242) ³⁰ [pii/S0168900201016242](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900201016242).
- [109] P Camarri et al. "Streamer suppression with SF6 in RPCs operated in avalanche mode". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 414.2 (1998), pp. 317–324. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(98)00576-2) ³⁵ [org/10.1016/S0168-9002\(98\)00576-2](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(98)00576-2). URL: [https://www.sciencedire](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900298005762)ct. [com/science/article/pii/S0168900298005762](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900298005762).
- [110] Gianluca Rigoletti, Roberto Guida, and Beatrice Mandelli. "Performance studies of RPC detectors operated with C2H2F4 and CO2 gas mixtures". In: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accel-*⁴⁰ *erators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 1049 (2023), p. 168088. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https : / / doi . org / 10 . 1016 / j .](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2023.168088) [nima.2023.168088](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2023.168088). URL: [https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900223000785) [article/pii/S0168900223000785](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900223000785).
- [111] Gianluca Rigoletti, Roberto Guida, and Beatrice Mandelli. "Studies on RPC detectors operated with environmentally friendly gas mixtures in LHC-like conditions". In: *The European Physical Journal Plus* 138.9 (Sept. 2023), p. 841. ISSN: 2190-5444. DOI: [10 . 1140 / epjp / s13360 - 023 -](https://doi.org/10.1140/epjp/s13360-023-04434-y) ⁵ [04434-y](https://doi.org/10.1140/epjp/s13360-023-04434-y). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1140/epjp/s13360-023-04434-y>.
	- [112] R Cardarelli et al. "Performance of RPCs and diamond detectors using a new very fast low noise preamplifier". In: *Journal of Instrumentation* 8.01 (Jan. 2013), P01003. DOI: [10.1088/1748-0221/8/01/P01003](https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/8/01/P01003). URL: <https://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/8/01/P01003>.
- ¹⁰ [113] Hosein Hashemi et al. "Ultra-High-Resolution Detector Simulation with Intra-Event Aware GAN and Self-Supervised Relational Reasoning". In: (Mar. 2023). arXiv: [2303.08046 \[physics.ins-det\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2303.08046).
- [114] B. Schwenker et al. "A neural network for beam background decomposition in Belle II at SuperKEKB". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 1049 (2023), ¹⁵ p. 168112. DOI: [10 . 1016 / j . nima . 2023 . 168112](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2023.168112). arXiv: [2301 . 06170](https://arxiv.org/abs/2301.06170) [\[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2301.06170).
- [115] LIU Yuxin. "Study of Sudden Beam Losses of SuperKEKB and Development of 3D Track Hardware Trigger using Machine Learning at Belle II". MA thesis. The graduate university for advanced studies, SOKENDAI, $2023.$
	- [116] Tomoyuki Shimasaki. "Study on first-level trigger of the Belle II experiment using upraded silicon strip detector". MA thesis. The university of Tokyo, 2023. URL: [https://docs.belle2.org/record/3400/files/](https://docs.belle2.org/record/3400/files/BELLE2-MTHESIS-2023-004.pdf) [BELLE2-MTHESIS-2023-004.pdf](https://docs.belle2.org/record/3400/files/BELLE2-MTHESIS-2023-004.pdf).
- 25 [117] T. Higuchi et al. "Modular pipeline readout electronics for the SuperBelle drift chamber". In: *IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci.* 52 (2005), pp. 1912–1917. DOI: [10.1109/TNS.2005.856913](https://doi.org/10.1109/TNS.2005.856913).
	- [118] Julien Langouët. "Future DAQ boards". In: 6th Workshop on LHCb up*grade II*. 2023. URL: <https://indico.icc.ub.edu/event/163>.
- ³⁰ [119] D. M. Asner et al. "Snowmass 2021 White Paper on Upgrading SuperKEKB with a Polarized Electron Beam: Discovery Potential and Proposed Implementation". In: *Snowmass 2021*. May 2022. arXiv: [2205.12847 \[physics.acc-ph\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2205.12847).
- [120] D. Charlet et al. "Conceptual study of a Compton polarimeter for the upgrade of the SuperKEKB collider with a polarized electron beam". In: ³⁵ *JINST* 18.10 (2023), P10014. DOI: [10.1088/1748-0221/18/10/P10014](https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-0221/18/10/P10014).
	- [121] J. P. Lees et al. "Precision e^- Beam Polarimetry at an e^+e^- B Factory using Tau-Pair Events". In: *Phys. Rev. D* 108.9 (2023), p. 092001. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.108.092001](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.108.092001). arXiv: [2308.00774 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2308.00774).
- [122] Shohei Nishida et al. "Development of an HAPD with 144 channels for ⁴⁰ the aerogel RICH of the Belle upgrade". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 595 (2008). Ed. by Andrea Bressan et al., pp. 150–153. DOI: [10 . 1016 / j .](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2008.07.032) [nima.2008.07.032](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2008.07.032).
- [123] S.K. Sahu et al. "Measurement of radiation damage on a silica aerogel Cherenkov radiator". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 382.3 (1996), pp. 441– 446. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002\(96\)](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(96)00768-1) [00768-1](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(96)00768-1).
- ⁵ [124] S. Iwata et al. "Particle identification performance of the prototype aerogel RICH counter for the Belle II experiment". In: *Progress of Theoretical and Experimental Physics* 2016.3 (Mar. 2016), 033H01. DOI: [10.1093/](https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/ptw005) [ptep / ptw005](https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/ptw005). eprint: [https : / / academic . oup . com / ptep / article](https://academic.oup.com/ptep/article-pdf/2016/3/033H01/19301325/ptw005.pdf) [pdf/2016/3/033H01/19301325/ptw005.pdf](https://academic.oup.com/ptep/article-pdf/2016/3/033H01/19301325/ptw005.pdf). URL: [https://doi.org/](https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/ptw005) [10.1093/ptep/ptw005](https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/ptw005).
	- [125] R. Giordano et al. "Frame-Level Intermodular Configuration Scrubbing of On-Detector FPGAs for the ARICH at Belle II". In: *IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci.* 68.12 (2021), pp. 2810–2817. DOI: [10.1109/TNS.2021.3127446](https://doi.org/10.1109/TNS.2021.3127446). arXiv: [2010.16194 \[physics.ins-det\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2010.16194).
- ¹⁵ [126] S. Korpar et al. "Silicon photomultiplier as a detector of Cherenkov photons". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 595 (2008). Ed. by Andrea Bressan et al., pp. 161–164. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2008.07.013](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2008.07.013).
- [127] S. Korpar et al. "Timing and cross-talk properties of BURLE multi-channel MCP PMTs". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 595.1 (2008). RICH 2007, pp. 169– ²⁰ 172. ISSN: 0168-9002. DOI: [https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2008.](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2008.07.022) [07.022](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2008.07.022).
	- [128] "AIDAInnova". In: *Horizon 2020 H2020-INFRAINNOV-2020-2 project*. 2021. URL: <https://cordis.europa.eu/project/id/101004761> (visited on 02/10/2022).
- ²⁵ [129] S. Nishida et al. "Readout ASICs and Electronics for the 144-channel HAPDs for the Aerogel RICH at Belle II". In: *Phys. Procedia* 37 (2012). Ed. by Ted Liu, pp. 1730–1735. DOI: [10.1016/j.phpro.2012.02.499](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phpro.2012.02.499).
- [130] S. Gomez et al. "FastIC developments for LHCb and Belle RICH upgrades". In: *Workshop on LHC Technologies (Red-LHC)*. 2021. URL: [https:](https://indico.cern.ch/event/1064182/) ³⁰ [//indico.cern.ch/event/1064182/](https://indico.cern.ch/event/1064182/) (visited on 02/10/2022).
	- [\[](https://www.hamamatsu.com/us/en/product/optical-sensors/apd/si-apd/S8664-55.html)131] *Hamamatsu*. URL: [https : / / www . hamamatsu . com / us / en / product /](https://www.hamamatsu.com/us/en/product/optical-sensors/apd/si-apd/S8664-55.html) [optical-sensors/apd/si-apd/S8664-55.html](https://www.hamamatsu.com/us/en/product/optical-sensors/apd/si-apd/S8664-55.html).
	- [\[](https://www.hamamatsu.com/us/en/product/optical-sensors/apd/si-apd/S8664-1010.html)132] *Hamamatsu*. URL: [https : / / www . hamamatsu . com / us / en / product /](https://www.hamamatsu.com/us/en/product/optical-sensors/apd/si-apd/S8664-1010.html) [optical-sensors/apd/si-apd/S8664-1010.html](https://www.hamamatsu.com/us/en/product/optical-sensors/apd/si-apd/S8664-1010.html).
- ³⁵ [133] Y. Jin et al. "Study of a pure CsI crystal readout by APD for Belle II end cap ECL upgrade". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 824 (2016). Ed. by Maria Giuseppina Bisogni et al., pp. 691–692. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2015.07.](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2015.07.034) [034](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2015.07.034).
- [134] S. Longo et al. "CsI(Tl) pulse shape discrimination with the Belle II elec-⁴⁰ tromagnetic calorimeter as a novel method to improve particle identification at electron–positron colliders". In: *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 982 (2020), p. 164562. DOI: [10.1016/j.nima.2020.164562](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2020.164562). arXiv: [2007.](https://arxiv.org/abs/2007.09642) [09642 \[physics.ins-det\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2007.09642).

- [135] *FBK*. URL: <https://www.fbk.eu/en/>.
- [136] *AdvanSid*. URL: <https://www.advansid.com/>.